

---

# STATE-DEPENDENT FORCES IN COLD QUANTUM GASES

---

Christopher Billington

Submitted in total fulfilment of the requirements  
of the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

**Supervisory committee:**

Prof Kristian Helmerson

Dr Lincoln Turner

Dr Russell Anderson



School of Physics and Astronomy  
Monash University

April, 2018

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

This page intentionally left blank

---

# Contents

<b>Contents</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>i</b>
1.1 Chapter overview . . . . .	i
<b>2 Atomic physics: Experimental techniques and theory</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1 Cooling, trapping, and manipulating atoms . . . . .	5
2.1.1 Doppler cooling . . . . .	5
2.1.2 Magneto-optical and magnetic trapping . . . . .	6
2.1.3 Optical trapping . . . . .	6
2.1.4 Polarisation gradient cooling . . . . .	7
2.1.5 Evaporative cooling . . . . .	7
2.1.6 Feshbach resonances . . . . .	8
2.2 Mean field theory: The Gross–Pitaevskii equation and vortices . . . . .	9
2.3 The $^{87}\text{Rb}$ D line . . . . .	10
2.3.1 Fine structure . . . . .	10
2.3.2 Hyperfine structure . . . . .	11
2.3.3 Zeeman sublevels . . . . .	14
2.3.4 Putting it all together: the $\{ F m_F\rangle\}$ basis . . . . .	15
2.3.5 Optical dipole transitions . . . . .	19
2.3.6 Magnetic dipole transitions . . . . .	25
2.3.7 Summary . . . . .	26
<b>3 Quantum mechanics on a computer</b>	<b>27</b>
3.1 From the abstract to the concrete: neglect, discretisation and representation . . . . .	27
3.2 Solution to the Schrödinger equation by direct exponentiation . . . . .	29
3.2.1 Matrix exponentiation by diagonalisation . . . . .	30
3.2.2 The interaction picture . . . . .	31
3.2.3 Time-ordered exponentials and time-ordered products . . . . .	32
3.2.4 The operator product/split-step method . . . . .	35
3.3 For everything else, there's fourth-order Runge–Kutta . . . . .	44
3.3.1 Complexity and parallelisability for the Schrödinger equation	45
3.4 Continuous degrees of freedom . . . . .	47
3.4.1 Spatial discretisation on a uniform grid: the Fourier basis . .	49
3.4.2 Finite differences . . . . .	58
3.4.3 Stability and the finite element discrete variable representation	62

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)

author: chrisjbillington

date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100

summary: hvsc

---

3.4.4	Nonlinearity considerations . . . . .	70
3.4.5	Conclusion . . . . .	70
3.5	Finding ground states . . . . .	71
3.5.1	Imaginary time evolution . . . . .	72
3.5.2	Successive over-relaxation . . . . .	73
3.5.3	Generalisation to excited states via Gram–Schmidt orthonormalisation . . . . .	76
3.6	Fourth order Runge–Kutta in an instantaneous local interaction picture . . . . .	76
3.6.1	Algorithm . . . . .	78
3.6.2	Domain of improvement over other methods . . . . .	80
3.6.3	Results . . . . .	83
3.6.4	Discussion . . . . .	85
<b>4</b>	<b>Development of a cold atom physics experiment</b>	<b>87</b>
4.0.1	Vacuum system . . . . .	87
4.0.2	Cooling and trapping of atoms . . . . .	90
4.0.3	Transport of atoms . . . . .	90
<b>5</b>	<b>Software for experiment control and analysis</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Particle velocimetry of vortices in Bose–Einstein condensates</b>	<b>103</b>
6.0.1	Motivation: Turbulence . . . . .	104
6.0.2	Method . . . . .	105
6.1	Simulations of Sisyphus cooling . . . . .	107
6.1.1	Description of cooling scheme . . . . .	107
6.1.2	Methods . . . . .	109
6.1.3	Results . . . . .	110
6.1.4	Vortex-assisted Sisyphus cooling . . . . .	112
<b>7</b>	<b>Wave mixing in Bose–Einstein condensates</b>	<b>115</b>
7.1	Off-resonant four wave mixing . . . . .	115
7.2	Spin wave mixing . . . . .	115
<b>8</b>	<b>Hidden variables for semiclassical models with state-dependent forces</b>	<b>117</b>
8.0.1	Semiclassical models . . . . .	118
8.0.2	Stern–Gerlach separation and evaporative cooling . . . . .	119
8.1	Hidden variable theories . . . . .	122
8.1.1	Numerically evaluating Schrödinger theory . . . . .	124
8.1.2	Time-dependent formulation of Tully’s fewest-switches algorithm	126
8.1.3	Framing fewest-switches as a hidden-variable theory . . . . .	128
8.1.4	Distinguishing between spatial and temporal transitions in arbitrary hidden-variable theories . . . . .	129
8.2	Approximate Markovian decoherence rate for separating wavepackets . . . . .	130
8.3	Choice of wavepacket size . . . . .	135
<b>References</b>		<b>137</b>

# CHAPTER I

## Introduction

THE SUBJECT OF STUDY of this thesis is Bose–Einstein condensation, as well as associated experimental and theoretical techniques and phenomena in cold atom physics. The following chapters describe my work in a cold atom research group over the past several years, pertaining to apparatus construction, experiment, theory, and software design and development. An overarching theme is *state-dependent forces* on cold atoms. Selectively subjecting atoms to forces based on what state they are in is at the core of many phenomena in cold atom physics. As I go into in the following chapters, different types of state selectivity allow for cooling and imaging techniques that would otherwise not be possible, momentum state-selectivity is central to wave-mixing phenomena; and semiclassical models run into a problem when state-selective forces cannot be disregarded in determining the classical force that atoms modelled semiclassically ought to be subjected to.

Bose–Einstein condensates (BECs) in dilute atomic gases are superfluids that can be created in the lab at extremely low temperatures. This strange state of matter was predicted in 1925 by Bose and Einstein [1, 2], first produced experimentally in 1995 [3] in a cloud of rubidium atoms, and has since been made out of many other atoms, usually alkali metals [4–7]. In a BEC, a macroscopic sample of bosonic atoms all occupy the same quantum state, and many of the features of the single particle wavefunctions are exhibited by the cloud as a whole. Bose–Einstein condensation and cold atoms and ions more generally have rich applications in precision measurement [8, 9], quantum computation [10, 11] and quantum simulation [12, 13].

### 1.1 Chapter overview

Various experimental techniques are used to produce and study Bose–Einstein condensates, many of which exploit or necessitate an understanding of the quantum behaviour of the atomic systems in question. I summarise some of these techniques and detail the atomic physics principles underlying them in chapter 2.

The fields of Bose–Einstein condensation and cold atoms more generally enjoy a tight coupling between theory and experiment, not least because of the enduring usefulness and accuracy of mean-field theory. In mean-field theory, the quantum matter field operator of the atoms comprising a Bose–Einstein condensate is replaced with its expectation value at each point in space, allowing the entire multi-particle system to be modelled with little more computational complexity than that required to model a single-particle wavefunction.<sup>1</sup> The resulting differential equation—the Gross–Pitaevskii equation—is nonlinear and using it to propagate a condensate wavefunction in time generally requires numerical techniques rather than analytic ones. My favourite numerical methods for do-

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

<sup>1</sup>Mean field theory is accurate in the low-temperature limit, in which it has some remaining limitations—it does not for example predict the observed s-wave scattering halos when two BEC wavepackets collide [14], but it is sufficient for modelling a wide range of experiments nonetheless.

ing so (which apply more generally to numerically evolving quantum systems of all kinds) are described in chapter 3. In chapter 3 I also develop a variation on fourth-order Runge–Kutta integration which improves on one of its deficiencies for simulating quantum systems. I also present arguments that a fairly sophisticated method of discretising partial differential equations—the finite element discrete variable representation—may offer less computational efficiency than simpler methods for computing solutions of comparable accuracy to the Gross–Pitaevskii and Schrödinger wave equations.

As an experimental field, BEC research involves the construction of apparatuses capable of implementing the techniques described in chapter 2 in order to produce, control, and measure BECs. Chapter 4 describes some of the process of constructing such an apparatus, which involves a vacuum system, magnetic coils and optical systems. I present an optical layout for producing magneto-optically trapped  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  atoms (a step on the way to condensation) that I designed and assembled as an exchange student in the group of József Fortágh at the University of Tübingen’s Physikalisches Institut.

Production, control, and measurement of cold atom systems require more than the necessary optics and magnetic sources to be installed—they must be controllable in a time-accurate way in order to execute the necessary cooling processes, manipulate the system as desired, and observe the results. Production of a condensate takes on the order of tens of seconds, requiring precisely timed pulses of laser light at specific frequencies, sweeps of magnetic field strengths, and frequency sweeps of radio and microwave radiation. This cannot all be done by human experimenters alone, and so requires computer automation of some kind. In chapter 5 I reproduce our publication on a suite of software programs, the *labscript suite*. This software leverages modern software development techniques such as object orientation, abstraction and isolation as well as older principles—such as aspects of the Unix philosophy—to produce a powerful, maintainable, extensible system for designing, running and analysing shot-based experiments on commodity hardware.

As superfluids, BECs have zero viscosity and as such can support persistent flows. In classical fluid dynamics the absence of viscosity means that a fluid cannot support vorticity,<sup>2</sup> and must be irrotational. However, fluid circulation can still occur around points of zero fluid density, known as vortices. In BECs this circulation is also quantised, in units of  $\hbar/m$ .

These quantised vortices are topological defects—the phase of the macroscopic wavefunction winds by a multiple of  $2\pi$  around them, and is undefined at the center of the vortex core itself. Quantised vortices were observed in superfluid helium<sup>3</sup> in the early 1960s [15], and in BEC in a dilute atomic gas in 1999 [16]. The formation, dynamics and decay of these vortices are believed to be important for the study of superfluid turbulence [17].

In chapter 6 I present simulations exploring the feasibility of imaging these vortices in-situ using *tracer particles*. Atoms of one kind ( $^{87}\text{Rb}$ ) may become trapped in the cores of quantised vortices in a condensate of another kind ( $^{41}\text{K}$ ), and if imaged in a time-resolved way, reveal the motion of these vortices. A primary concern in any implementation of such a scheme is keeping the tracer atoms cold enough that they remain trapped in the vortex cores even as they scatter light for imaging. To that end, in chapter 6 I present modelling of a novel—if impractical—laser cooling scheme for Sisyphus cooling of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  atoms in a 34 G magnetic field—a field strength at which  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  and  $^{41}\text{K}$  repel each other strongly (leading to tighter trapping in the vortex cores).

In a BEC, the wavelike behaviour of matter is apparent, unlike at higher temperatures at which atoms are well described as classical particles. Not only are atoms in a BEC wavelike, they are described by a *nonlinear* wave equation. As with nonlinear optical systems, they therefore exhibit wave-mixing behaviour whereby a number of momentum states may interact to produce additional momentum states. In chapter 7 I describe our lab’s four wave mixing experiment, which reproduced an existing result for BECs, and then our attempt at six wave mixing—a higher order effect (in the sense of perturbation

theory). We did not observe the expected six wave mixing, rather we saw *four* wave mixing despite the required resonance condition apparently being violated. This result agreed with mean-field theory simulations however, implying that the result was unlikely to be due to some experimental error.

Atoms have spin, and when other spin-projection states cannot be disregarded, mean-field theory for spinful BECs takes the form of multiple, interacting fields. This allows for richer nonlinear dynamics that a single-component BEC, with wave mixing producing new momentum states and new spin-projection states in tandem. In chapter 7 I present simulation results showing this “spin wave” mixing, although the main result is that—for  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  at least—the effect is very small and unlikely to be experimentally observable in existing  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  BEC experiments.

As mentioned above, at high temperatures (higher than that at which atoms Bose-condense) atoms are well described as classical particles. This is true in the sense that the wavelike nature of the atoms can be disregarded—they move through space like classical billiard balls obeying Newtonian mechanics. The internal state of the atoms, however—for example the state of an outer shell electron—may not be well modelled by classical mechanics. Even at room temperature, an electron is poorly described as a classical charged particle orbiting a nucleus. When there is *coupling* then, between this internal state of an atom and its motional state, the quantum-ness of the internal state can in some sense ‘leak’ into its motional state even if the motion is otherwise modelled well classically. The classic example of this is the Stern–Gerlach experiment [18], in which a beam of atoms splits into two beams as it passes through a magnetic field gradient. A similar situation arises for atoms in a magnetic trap—a common feature of cold atom experiments and often used in the final stage of cooling to BEC. To correctly model the losses of atoms from these traps, one needs to model the internal state of the atoms quantum-mechanically, but it is computationally expensive to also model their spatial motion using full quantum wavefunctions. We would like a way to model the atoms’ motion classically, but in such a way that it can reproduce Stern–Gerlach separation—with modelled atoms taking one or the other trajectory probabilistically, with the probabilities consistent with those of a fully quantum treatment. In chapter ?? I present such a model, one that is based on a *hidden variable* carried around with each atom being modelled, which selects one of the atom’s internal eigenstates. The apparent definiteness of the hidden variable allows the spatial motion part of the modelling to treat the atoms’ spin projection degree of freedom as if it were in a definite state, allowing the modelling to take a single, definite trajectory. The hidden variable itself is evolved using a stochastic hidden variable theory that ensures its probability of corresponding to any particular spin-projection state is consistent with the underlying quantum evolution of the atom’s internal degrees of freedom.

This page intentionally left blank

# Atomic physics: Experimental techniques and theory

**B**OSE-EINSTEIN CONDENSATES provide such a tantalising opportunity for studying quantum phenomena not only because of their interesting properties, but also because of the level of control they afford, with parameters able to be tuned and manipulated in order to investigate various regimes. Many of the same techniques which allow experimentalists such control over a BEC are also employed in the production of BEC.

The main experimental techniques used to create BEC are Doppler cooling, magneto-optical, magnetic, and dipole trapping, polarisation gradient (Sisyphus) cooling, and evaporative cooling. These were discovered, perhaps by no coincidence, in roughly the same order as they are called for in a BEC experiment, and many were first discovered along the way to the first realisations of Bose–Einstein condensation.

Section 2.1 is a whirlwind summary of these and a few other experimental techniques. Then in section 2.2, I'll present some of the theory describing superfluid flow and vortices and in BEC, which is central to the simulations of vortex tracking presented in chapter 6. The final section of this chapter, section 2.3, will construct the detailed theory for describing the internal state of a  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  atom in magnetic and optical fields, considering only the first  $L = 0$  to  $L = 1$  excitation is accessible to rubidium's sole outer-shell electron. The resulting Hamiltonian describes 32 sublevels, and forms the basis of any detailed calculations of laser cooling and trapping.

## 2.1 Cooling, trapping, and manipulating atoms

### 2.1.1 Doppler cooling

Doppler cooling, demonstrated in 1978 [19] is a consequence of the simple observation that atoms see the wavelength of incident light Doppler shifted depending on their velocity. For example, the electric field of a linearly polarised optical plane wave is:

$$\mathbf{E} \propto \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t), \quad (2.1)$$

which for an atom moving with constant velocity  $\mathbf{v}$  can be written:

$$\mathbf{E} \propto \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v}t - \omega t) \quad (2.2)$$

$$= \cos(-\omega_{\text{eff}}t), \quad (2.3)$$

where  $\omega_{\text{eff}} = \omega - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v}$  is the effective angular frequency of the laser as seen by the atom.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

This can be used to selectively transfer momentum to only fast-moving atoms, by tuning an incident laser slightly redder than would be required for a resonant absorption. If six lasers in counterpropagating pairs orthogonal to each other surround a cloud of atoms, the atoms can be cooled close to the *Doppler limit* [20, p 58]

$$k_B T_D = \frac{\hbar\Gamma}{2} \quad (2.4)$$

where  $\Gamma$  is the linewidth of the atomic transition. For the cooling transition used for Doppler cooling  $^{87}\text{Rb}$ <sup>1</sup>, this gives 146  $\mu\text{K}$ , which is approximately a factor of a thousand too high for Bose-condensation. These atoms are also not trapped.

### 2.1.2 Magneto-optical and magnetic trapping

Magneto-optical trapping, first demonstrated in 1987 [21] comes from the realisation that a magnetic field can be used to *spatially* vary the detuning from resonance that the atoms in the above mentioned arrangement of lasers see. This is possible due to the Zeeman effect [22], in which the wavelengths of atomic transitions are shifted in a magnetic field.

If a field profile can be found which causes the transition to come closer to resonance as the atoms move away from a central point, then it forms a trap—atoms that stray too far from the centre will absorb more strongly and be deflected back<sup>2</sup>.

The field configuration used in an anti-Helmholtz one: two coils opposite each other carrying opposing currents. The resulting magnetic field profile has a zero in the middle and increases in magnitude in all directions.

With the Doppler beams off, this magnetic field still provides a trapping potential, due to the magnetic dipole interaction:

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = -\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B}, \quad (2.5)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  is the atomic magnetic moment, and  $\mathbf{B}$  the magnetic field. This only traps some atomic spin states, and has losses due to spin-flips [23] near the field zero.

The optimal magnetic field gradient for forming a magneto-optical trap (MOT) is lower than that required to merely hold atoms against gravity, and thus there is little if any magnetic trapping occurring in a MOT—the trapping almost entirely results from the position-dependent rate of photon absorption caused by the Zeeman shift due to the magnetic field. To transfer atoms from a MOT to a solely magnetic trap, the magnetic field gradient must be increased substantially.

### 2.1.3 Optical trapping

Optical trapping on the other hand relies on the *dipole force*, in which off-resonant light shifts the energy of the eigenstates of the combined atom-light system, the so called *dressed states*. This energy shift, called the *light shift*, depends on the intensity of the light, and so results in a potential that spatially varies as the intensity of the light. In the limit of large detuning (compared to Rabi frequency), the resulting energy shift for an atom in a groundstate (the shift for an excited state is the same but with the opposite sign) is [20, p 8]:

$$\Delta E = \frac{\hbar\Omega^2}{4\delta} \quad (2.6)$$

where  $\delta$  is the detuning from resonance and the Rabi frequency is:

$$\Omega = \frac{E_0}{\hbar} \langle n' | e\hat{r} | n \rangle, \quad (2.7)$$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

where  $E_0$  is the amplitude of the light's electric field and  $\langle n'|\hat{e}\hat{r}|n\rangle$  is the transition dipole moment between the two states in a two-level system. This transition dipole moment can be either for two specific sublevels coupled by a laser, the calculation of which is detailed in section 2.3.5, or an overall effective transition dipole moment between two manifolds containing many sublevels, if the detuning much larger compared to the spacing between the sublevels.

With the potential proportional to  $E_0^2$ , and thus the light's intensity, the force the atom experiences is proportional to the light's intensity gradient. For this reason, the dipole force is also called the *gradient force*. The name *dipole force* comes from the fact that the force can be equivalently understood to arise from the polarisability of atoms in a light field, giving rise to a force identical to that which traps polarisable materials in optical tweezers [24].

#### 2.1.4 Polarisation gradient cooling

Polarisation gradient cooling, also called Sisyphus cooling, was proposed in 1989 [25, 26] to explain experimentally measured cold atom cloud temperatures [27] which, at NIST in 1988, were found to be well below the expected limit obtainable by the well understood method of Doppler cooling<sup>3</sup>, one of the few examples of experiments turning out better than expected. A one dimensional theory has been developed [25] which has found remarkable agreement with three dimensional experiments [28]

One common configuration for Sisyphus cooling comprises two counterpropagating laser beams in each spatial dimension, both linearly polarised but with their polarisation angles perpendicular to one another. The optical field resulting from the two beams' superposition has regions of linear polarisation and of both helicities of circular polarisation, and varies between them on a length scale shorter than an optical wavelength.

The effect on multi-level atoms as they move from regions of one circular polarisation to another is that they are pumped alternately from one extreme of their spin-projection states to the other, alternately climbing and descending potential hills due to the dipole forces from the regions of different polarisations<sup>4</sup>. And so, like the Greek legend of Sisyphus<sup>5</sup>, who was doomed to push a rock uphill for eternity, the atoms are climbing hills repeatedly. Due to the state dependence of the strength of the dipole forces, the atoms climb steeper hills than they descend, and are thus slowed and cooled.

This type of cooling does not work in a magnetic field; the splitting of transition frequencies makes it impossible for an atom to traverse its spin manifold on one laser frequency. For this reason the Sisyphus cooling stage is performed with magnetic fields off, though a sufficiently short period is required such that the atoms can be recaptured when the trapping field is restored.

<sup>3</sup>As well as to explain other discrepancies between experiments and the theory of Doppler cooling, such as the optimal detuning of light being much greater than predicted.

<sup>4</sup>If you consider only one polarisation of light, its intensity varies sinusoidally in space, creating a series of potential hills and wells via the dipole force

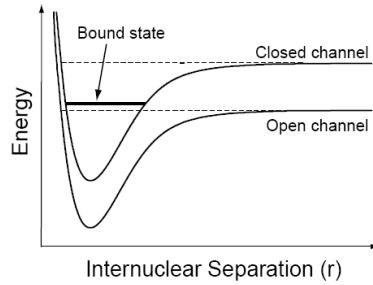
<sup>5</sup>Polarisation gradient cooling is but one of a family of so called 'Sisyphus cooling' methods, all of which involve atoms repeatedly climbing potential hills.

#### 2.1.5 Evaporative cooling

The final stage of cooling is forced RF evaporative cooling [3, 29], which decreases the temperature of the cloud by systematically removing the hottest atoms. This is performed in a magnetic trap, which as mentioned earlier, only traps certain spin states. Evaporation proceeds by using an *RF knife* to induce spin flips in the atoms. The RF frequency is chosen such that it is only resonant with atoms some distance away from the center of the trap (via the Zeeman shift). The furthest out atoms are the most energetic, possessing the energy to climb the magnetic potential the furthest. By flipping their spins, these atoms are ejected due to the magnetic field becoming anti-trapping for them.

The cloud is given some time to rethermalise and the knife<sup>6</sup> is moved inward where it removes slightly colder atoms. This is repeated until the desired compromise of lower temperature/lower atom number is reached. Usually some method is employed to prevent atoms near the center of the trap from undergoing spin flips [23] as they move across the

<sup>6</sup>So called because it cuts the tail off the velocity distribution of the atom cloud.



**Figure 2.1:** When atoms approach each other with spins aligned, they are in the *open channel*. In this channel they are unbound, but do not have enough energy to be free in the other channel - the *closed channel*. In the close range however, the atoms may have energy corresponding to a bound (molecular) state of the closed channel, a resonance which causes a divergence in the scattering length. The energy difference between the two channels can be tuned with a magnetic field and so these resonances can be induced in a wide range of situations.

field zero. The method used in our lab is to use an optical dipole trap in combination with the magnetic trap [30], such that the coldest atoms get trapped in the dipole trap which is offset from the magnetic field zero.

### 2.1.6 Feshbach resonances

<sup>7</sup>Feshbach resonances can also be induced optically and with RF but magnetic resonances are the most commonly used.

A Feshbach resonance [31] is an enhancement of the interparticle interaction strength when when a certain magnetic field strength is applied<sup>7</sup>. This phenomenon was first discovered in ultracold atoms in 1998 [32], and is now a staple of cold atom experiments.

The interparticle interaction mentioned above:

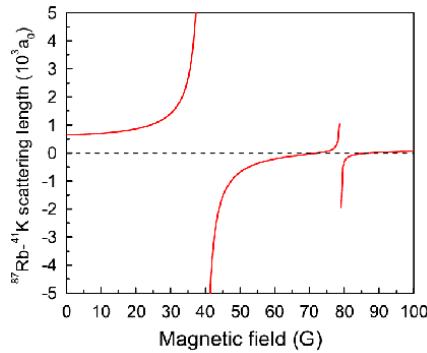
$$g = \frac{2\pi\hbar^2 a}{m_r} \quad (2.8)$$

where  $m_r$  is the reduced mass of a pair of the interacting particles, is dependent on a parameter  $a$  called the *s-wave scattering length*, which characterises low energy collisions between atoms. It is sensitive not only to what species of atoms are colliding, but also to their spin states. For each combination of spins, there is a different inter-atomic potential (called a *channel*) which determines the collision dynamics (Figure 2.1).

The resulting scattering length is sensitive to any bound states of this inter-atomic potential which are near the collision energy. If the channels of different spin states are coupled via the hyperfine interaction<sup>8</sup>, then the scattering length is also sensitive to bound states in the channels other than the one the atoms are in when they are far from each other. Due to the Zeeman effect, the energies between the different channels can be shifted with a magnetic field, and so a bound state can be shifted close to the collision energy, which causes the scattering length to diverge.

The end result is that at certain magnetic field strengths we find that atoms are much more strongly attracted to or repelled from each other.

A particular Feshbach resonance of interest is shown in Figure 2.2, and can be used to enhance the interspecies repulsion between  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  and  $^{41}\text{K}$ . The use of this resonance is assumed for the simulations in chapter 6 to trap tracer particles more strongly in vortex cores of a BEC.



**Figure 2.2:** Predicted interspecies scattering length [33] as a function of magnetic field strength, for  $^{41}\text{K}$  and  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  both in their lowest energy hyperfine groundstate. The 35 gauss resonance is one of the main reasons for this pair of atoms being used in this project. It has a particularly low field strength and large width compared to most Feshbach resonances.

## 2.2 Mean field theory: The Gross–Pitaevskii equation and vortices

Bose-condensates are described well by *mean field* theory, whereby the many-body wavefunction is approximated by a product of identical single-particle wavefunctions. Indeed, that the majority of the atoms are in the same quantum state is one of the defining features of BEC. The effect of interparticle interactions is included as a nonlinear term in the Schrödinger equation for the single particle wavefunctions, known as the Gross–Pitaevskii equation:

$$\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} = \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V(\mathbf{x}) + g|\Psi|^2 \right] \Psi, \quad (2.9)$$

where  $g$  characterises the strength of the interparticle interactions<sup>9</sup>, and  $\Psi = \sqrt{N}\Psi_{\text{single}}$  is the single-particle wavefunction scaled by the square root of the number of particles<sup>10</sup>.

In the hydrodynamic formulation of quantum mechanics [34], the flow velocity of a spatial wavefunction can be defined by considering the probability current to be a product of density and velocity. This allows us to define the superfluid velocity of a BEC as:

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{\hbar}{m} \nabla \phi \quad (2.10)$$

where  $\phi$  is the complex phase of the condensate wavefunction  $\Psi$ . Integrating this velocity over any closed path  $\gamma$  gives us the circulation:

$$C = \frac{\hbar}{m} \oint_{\gamma} \nabla \phi \cdot d\mathbf{s} \quad (2.11)$$

$$= \frac{\hbar}{m} 2\pi n. \quad n = 0, 1, 2 \dots \quad (2.12)$$

<sup>9</sup>The nonlinear constant  $g$  is usually positive—having the effect of stabilising BECs by self-repulsion.

<sup>10</sup>Thus giving it the property that  $|\Psi|^2$  is the particle density.

The fact that the circulation is quantised means that vorticity cannot exist in the condensate except in one-dimensional lines, about which the wavefunction's phase winds by a multiple of  $2\pi$ . These topological defects are the quantised vortices that are central to the vortex tracking simulations in chapter 6.

At a vortex core, the atom density of a BEC must go to zero. This can be intuitively understood to arise from centrifugal forces, but is also required in order for the wavefunction to be continuous and single-valued across the core. This drop in density in the

vicinity of a vortex core is exploited by the method simulated in chapter 6 to trap atoms within the cores.

### 2.3 The $^{87}\text{Rb}$ D line

We atomic physicists do our theory work at an intermediate level of abstraction, at which many quantities and systems of interest can be computed and simulated with accurate models using standard quantum mechanics, but with models that are not fully a-priori. Instead, the Hamiltonians we feed to the machinery of quantum mechanics encapsulate some of the details we are not interested in or that are too hard to compute, with the link between the underlying layers of reductionism and the higher layer usually provided by experimentally measured values rather than calculations from fundamental physics. In this way we can readily compute results about the atoms we are interested in by treating them as simpler systems than they actually are, with some of the underlying details encapsulated by terms in an effective Hamiltonian for the dynamics that we are interested in.

In this section I'll summarise what the  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  D line looks like from the perspective of a cold atom physicist, building up a Hamiltonian containing all 32 sublevels of the ground and first excited state of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  including fine structure, hyperfine structure, interaction with a magnetic field, and optical transitions between states. This Hamiltonian is the starting point for any calculations regarding cooling, trapping, and coherent control of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$ , and for other alkali earth metals is much the same.

Much of the details of this section are drawn from references [20, 35–38], but the reader should be aware that there are considerable conventional and notational differences between different literature sources. What is presented here is summarised and framed in a way that I think is useful to an experimentalist looking to use the theory to make concrete calculations about real systems.

#### 2.3.1 Fine structure

The rubidium 87 D line refers to the first excitation available to the sole outer electron of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$ . Both the ground and excited state of this transition have the same principal quantum number, but different orbital angular momentum quantum numbers. Upon closer inspection, it is not just one transition between a ground state and an excited state—there are two excited states, and the two resulting transitions are called, in order of their transition frequencies, the D<sub>1</sub> and D<sub>2</sub> lines. Thus the ground and first excited state of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  are actually a ground state plus two non-degenerate excited states, once we take into account fine structure. The groundstate is an S state (electronic orbital angular momentum quantum number  $L = 0$ ), called the S<sub>1/2</sub> state, and the two excited states are P states ( $L = 1$ ), one with the electron spin anti-aligned with its orbital angular momentum (resulting in total angular momentum quantum number  $J = 1/2$ ) and one with the electron spin aligned with its orbital angular momentum ( $J = 3/2$ ), called the P<sub>1/2</sub> and P<sub>3/2</sub> states respectively. In all of these states,  $^{87}\text{Rb}$ 's single outer-shell electron occupies an orbital with principle quantum number  $n = 5$ , which for brevity we leave out of the notation. The transition between S<sub>1/2</sub> and P<sub>1/2</sub> is called the D<sub>1</sub> line, with experimentally measured (angular) transition frequency  $\omega_{\text{D}_1}$ , and the transition between S<sub>1/2</sub> and P<sub>3/2</sub> is the D<sub>2</sub> line with angular transition frequency  $\omega_{\text{D}_2}$ . These transition frequencies correspond to optical wavelengths of  $\lambda_{\text{D}_1} \approx 795 \text{ nm}$  and  $\lambda_{\text{D}_2} \approx 780 \text{ nm}$  [35].

This fine structure is treated entirely empirically for our purposes, and so our base Hamiltonian for the rubidium D line, taking into account only fine structure, is simply a statement of the experimentally measured energy differences between the states:

$$\hat{H}_{\text{fs}} = \hbar\omega_{\text{D}_2} \hat{1}_{P_{3/2}} \oplus \hbar\omega_{\text{D}_1} \hat{1}_{P_{1/2}} \oplus \hat{0}_{S_{1/2}}, \quad (2.13)$$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

where  $\hat{1}_{P_{3/2}}$ ,  $\hat{1}_{P_{1/2}}$ , and  $\hat{0}_{S_{1/2}}$  are identity and zero operators each acting on the subspace of states within the  $P_{\frac{3}{2}}$ ,  $P_{\frac{1}{2}}$ , and  $S_{\frac{1}{2}}$  manifolds respectively, and  $\oplus$  is the direct sum.<sup>11</sup> The matrix representation  $H_{\text{fs}}$  of  $\hat{H}_{\text{fs}}$  in the basis in which it is diagonal (which we will call the  $\{|L_J\rangle\}$  basis, since  $L$  and  $J$  are good quantum numbers<sup>12</sup> for specifying one of the three states, which we write with the spectroscopic notation letter— $S$  or  $P$ —corresponding to the value of  $L$  in place of its numerical value) is

$$H_{\text{fs}} = \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & & & \\ & \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & \hbar\omega_{D_2} & \ddots \\ & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & \ddots \end{bmatrix} & & \\ & & \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & \hbar\omega_{D_1} & \ddots \\ & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & \ddots \end{bmatrix} & & \\ & & & \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & 0 & \ddots \\ & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & \ddots \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.14)$$

which is a block-diagonal matrix with each block also being a diagonal matrix. We have not yet specified the size of each submatrix—the size of each differs and depends on how many hyperfine and Zeeman sublevels are in that state.

This base Hamiltonian is worth singling out since the energy differences between its three states are orders of magnitude larger than any of the energy differences between hyperfine and Zeeman sublevels within them. When doing any sort of calculations or simulations then, this time-independent Hamiltonian can often be removed from the equations using an interaction picture (see Section 3.2.2), as done in Section 6.1 in simulating laser cooling.

### 2.3.2 Hyperfine structure

Within each of the  $S_{1/2}$ ,  $P_{1/2}$  and  $P_{3/2}$  states, the single outer-shell electron's total angular momentum  $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$  has an interaction with  $^{87}\text{Rb}$ 's nuclear angular momentum  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$ . This results in multiple discrete energy levels depending on the relative orientation of the two separate angular momenta. The interaction Hamiltonian for this hyperfine structure is<sup>13</sup> [35, 39]:

$$\hat{H}_{\text{hfs}} = \frac{A_{\text{hfs}}}{\hbar^2} \hat{\mathbf{I}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} + \frac{B_{\text{hfs}}}{\hbar^2} \frac{3(\hat{\mathbf{I}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}})^2 + \frac{3}{2}\hat{\mathbf{I}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} - I(I+1)J(J+1)}{2I(2I-1)J(2J-1)}, \quad (2.15)$$

where  $J$  is the total angular momentum quantum number of the electron, equal to either  $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{3}{2}$  depending on which state in the D line we are considering,  $I = \frac{3}{2}$  is the total angular momentum quantum number of the nucleus, and  $A_{\text{hfs}}$  and  $B_{\text{hfs}}$  are empirically determined coupling constants. Here we see the boundary between the quantities we can calculate with the machinery of quantum mechanics and those that we determine empirically—this expression applies so long as  $J$  and  $I$  are good quantum numbers,<sup>14</sup> and the two terms are the dipolar and quadrupolar interactions [39] between two angular momenta, with the coupling constants determined empirically and encapsulating details that are difficult to compute a-priori, such as relativistic effects and the exact shape of the electron orbitals given the presence of inner shell electrons. For the spherically-symmetric  $S_{1/2}$  groundstate, there is no quadrupolar interaction and so  $B_{\text{hfs}}$  is only nonzero for the two  $P$  excited states.<sup>15</sup> The values of  $A_{\text{hfs}}$  and  $B_{\text{hfs}}$  for each of the three  $L_J$  states of the D line can be found in [35].

For a given state of the D line, we can construct the matrix representation  $H_{\text{hfs}}^{I \times J}$  of  $\hat{H}_{\text{hfs}}$  in the  $I \times J$  basis—which we define as the basis in which both the  $z$  vector components  $\hat{I}_z$  and  $\hat{J}_z$  of  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$  are diagonal—by constructing matrix representations  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}^{I \times J}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{J}}^{I \times J}$  of the operators  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$  in that basis and then applying the expression (2.15). The overset  $I \times J$  on each of the matrices indicates that the matrix is a representation of its respective operator in the  $I \times J$  basis, so named because its basis vectors can be obtained

<sup>11</sup>Not to be confused with the Kronecker sum, with which it shares notation. The direct sum concatenates matrices as blocks, producing a larger, block-diagonal matrix with dimension equal to the *sum* of the dimensions of the matrices being direct-summed, whereas the Kronecker sum is the regular sum of matrices after each has been multiplied using the Kronecker-product with identity matrices with sizes of the other matrices in the sum, producing matrices with dimension equal to the *product* of those being summed.

<sup>12</sup>A *good quantum number* is a number that can be used to label (not necessarily uniquely) an energy eigenstate, and on which the energy eigenvalue of that state depends. Saying  $J$  and  $L$  are good quantum numbers is saying that the eigenstates of the overall Hamiltonian are also eigenstates of  $\hat{L}^2$  and  $\hat{j}^2$ , since eigenstates of these two operators can be specified by stating their quantum numbers  $L$  and  $J$ .

<sup>13</sup>Note that this expression differs from those in the cited references by a factor of  $1/\hbar^2$ —this is because I define the  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$  angular momentum operators in SI units, rather than in units of  $\hbar^2$ .

<sup>14</sup> $J$  is a good quantum number so long as the hyperfine splitting is small compared to the spacing between the three states of the D line, which it is, and  $I$  is a good quantum number so long as the hyperfine splitting is small compared to the energy difference between the groundstate and the first *nuclear* excited state, which it most certainly is.

<sup>15</sup>The quadrupolar term should be explicitly excluded from numerical computations of the hyperfine splitting on the  $S_{1/2}$  state, as it contains a division by zero in this case, which may lead to erroneous results even if the term is subsequently multiplied by  $B_{\text{hfs}} = 0$ .

<sup>16</sup>The different types of products available for matrices, vectors, operators, spaces, and their sets of basis vectors are rife with subfield-specific conventions and over-loaded notation, leading to much ambiguity. Although ‘Cartesian product’ connotes well what I mean here, it is still ambiguous. What I mean is that the  $\mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{J}$  basis is the set of basis vectors  $\{\mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v} \mid \mathbf{u} \in \mathcal{I}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathcal{J}\}$ . The notation  $\mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v}$ , which is also ambiguous, denotes the Kronecker product of two column vectors, producing a column vector with number of elements equal to the product of the number of elements in each of the two vectors—not the ‘outer’ or ‘tensor’ product, which would produce a matrix.

<sup>17</sup>This explicit procedure for constructing the matrix representations of these operators is useful for entering into a programming language to produce programs capable of performing atomic physics calculations for arbitrary total angular momentum quantum number  $J$ , without having to explicitly enter the angular momentum operators for each value of  $J$ , which can be tedious and prone to human error.

<sup>18</sup>I will hereafter use the terms “ $\mathcal{J}$  basis” and “ $\{|m_J\rangle\}$  basis”, and similarly for other bases, interchangeably, in the understanding that this identification of standard unit vectors with the basis kets is implied.

<sup>19</sup>We’re using the standard convention of ordering the eigenkets  $\{|m_J\rangle\}$  in descending order of  $m_J$ . This is at odds with the computer programming convention of looping over most indices in ascending order, and so care should be taken when constructing these matrices in a computer program.

via a Cartesian product<sup>16</sup> of the two sets of basis vectors from the  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{J}$  bases for the two individual nuclear and electronic angular momentum degrees of freedom, in which  $\hat{I}_z$  and  $\hat{J}_z$  are respectively diagonal.

To construct matrix representations of angular momentum operators in the product space basis  $\mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{J}$ , we first need their matrix representations  $\overset{\mathcal{I}}{\mathbf{I}}$  and  $\overset{\mathcal{J}}{\mathbf{J}}$  in the bases of their respective subspaces, which we will write as  $\mathbf{I}$  and  $\mathbf{J}$  for brevity. We can then expand the two operators into the product space by applying a Kronecker product with an appropriate identity matrix to each:

$$\overset{\mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{J}}{\mathbf{I}} = \mathbf{I} \otimes \overset{\mathcal{J}}{\mathbb{I}} \quad (2.16)$$

$$\overset{\mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{J}}{\mathbf{J}} = \overset{\mathcal{I}}{\mathbb{I}} \otimes \mathbf{J} \quad (2.17)$$

where  $\overset{\mathcal{I}}{\mathbb{I}}$  is the matrix representation of the identity operator in the  $\mathcal{I}$  basis of the nuclear spin degree of freedom, equal to a  $(2I + 1) \times (2I + 1)$  identity matrix, with  $\overset{\mathcal{J}}{\mathbb{I}}$  defined similarly for the electronic spin degree of freedom.

Each of the two matrices  $\mathbf{I}$  and  $\mathbf{J}$  is actually a vector of matrices, one for the angular momentum projection in each of the directions  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ . The procedure for constructing such matrices for arbitrary total angular momentum quantum numbers is as follows.<sup>17</sup> I’ll show the procedure for constructing  $J_x$ ,  $J_y$  and  $J_z$  only for an arbitrary  $J$ , the procedure is identical for computing the vector components of  $\mathbf{I}$ .

For a given total angular momentum quantum number  $J$ , the vector components of  $\mathbf{J}$  in the  $\mathcal{J}$  basis (the basis in which  $J_z$  is diagonal) can be constructed using the raising and lowering operators  $\hat{J}_+$  and  $\hat{J}_-$ . Since the action of the raising and lowering operators on an eigenstate of  $J_z$  with angular momentum projection quantum number  $m_J$  is to produce an adjacent ( $m_J \pm 1$ ) eigenstate multiplied by a constant [40, p 192], this fact can be used to compute the nonzero matrix elements of  $\hat{J}_+$  and  $\hat{J}_-$  in the  $\{|m_J\rangle\}$  basis (the basis kets of which we identify with the standard basis vectors<sup>18</sup> for a  $2J + 1$  dimensional space in order to define the set of concrete basis vectors  $\mathcal{J}$ ):

$$\langle m_J + 1 | \hat{J}_+ | m_J \rangle = \hbar \sqrt{J(J+1) - m_J(m_J+1)}, \quad -J \leq m_J < J, \quad (2.18)$$

$$\langle m_J - 1 | \hat{J}_- | m_J \rangle = \hbar \sqrt{J(J+1) - m_J(m_J-1)}, \quad -J < m_J \leq J, \quad (2.19)$$

and therefore compute explicit matrices for  $J_+$  and  $J_-$  in the  $\{|m_J\rangle\}$  basis:<sup>19</sup>

$$J_+ = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \langle J | \hat{J}_+ | J-1 \rangle & 0 & \dots \\ \dots & 0 \langle J-1 | \hat{J}_+ | J-2 \rangle & 0 & \dots \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ & \dots & 0 \langle -J+2 | \hat{J}_+ | -J+1 \rangle & 0 \\ & & \dots & 0 \langle -J+1 | \hat{J}_+ | -J \rangle \\ & & & \dots \\ & & & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.20)$$

$$J_- = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \dots \\ \langle J-1 | \hat{J}_- | J \rangle & 0 \\ 0 & \langle J-2 | \hat{J}_- | J-1 \rangle & 0 & \dots \\ \dots & 0 & \langle J-3 | \hat{J}_- | J-2 \rangle & 0 & \dots \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ & \dots & 0 \langle -J | \hat{J}_- | -J+1 \rangle & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.21)$$

both of which have nonzero values along only one non-main diagonal adjacent to the main diagonal, and which form a Hermitian conjugate pair (or indeed, a transpose pair, since all elements are real). The matrix representations of  $\hat{J}_x$  and  $\hat{J}_y$  can then be computed by rearranging the defining expressions for  $\hat{J}_+$  and  $J_-$ :

$$\hat{J}_+ = \hat{J}_x + i\hat{J}_y, \quad (2.22)$$

$$\hat{J}_- = \hat{J}_x - i\hat{J}_y, \quad (2.23)$$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)

author: chrisjbillington

date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100

summary: hvsc

for  $\hat{J}_x$  and  $\hat{J}_y$ , and then applying the result to our matrix representations of  $\hat{J}_+$  and  $\hat{J}_-$  to obtain matrix representations  $J_x$  and  $J_y$  of  $\hat{J}_x$  and  $\hat{J}_y$  in the  $\{|m_J\rangle\}$  basis:

$$J_x = \frac{J_+ + J_-}{2}, \quad (2.24)$$

$$J_y = \frac{J_+ - J_-}{2i}. \quad (2.25)$$

Finally, since  $\{|m_J\rangle\}$  is the eigenbasis of  $J_z$  with eigenvalues  $\{\hbar m_J\}$ , the matrix representation of  $J_z$  in the  $\mathcal{J}$  basis is simply the diagonal matrix of eigenvalues:

$$J_z = \begin{bmatrix} \hbar J & & & \\ & \hbar(J-1) & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & \hbar(-J+1) \\ & & & & -\hbar J \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.26)$$

We can also construct the matrix representation  $J^2$  of the total (squared) angular momentum operator  $\hat{J}^2$  as

$$J^2 = J_x^2 + J_y^2 + J_z^2, \quad (2.27)$$

or equivalently

$$J^2 = J(J+1)\hbar^2 \mathbb{I}, \quad (2.28)$$

since every  $m_J$  state is an eigenstate of the  $J^2$  operator with eigenvalue  $J(J+1)\hbar^2$ .

The above prescription can be used to produce matrix representations of angular momentum operators  $J_x, J_y, J_z$  and  $J^2$  for any integer or half-integer total angular momentum quantum number  $J$ . The three components can be considered a vector of matrices,  $\mathbf{J}$ , for the vector angular momentum operator  $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ . Below is a Python function that computes these matrices as well as the corresponding eigenvectors:

---

```

1 import numpy as np
2 hbar = 1.054571628e-34
3
4 def angular_momentum_operators(J):
5     """Construct matrix representations of the angular momentum operators Jx,
6     Jy, Jz and J2 in the eigenbasis of Jz for given total angular momentum
7     quantum number J. Return them, as well as the number of angular momentum
8     projection states, a list of angular momentum projection quantum numbers
9     mJ, and a list of their corresponding eigenvectors, in the same order as
10    the matrix elements (in descending order of mJ)."""
11    n_mJ = int(round(J**2 + 1))
12    mJlist = np.linspace(J, -J, n_mJ)
13    Jp = np.diag([hbar * np.sqrt(J*(J+1) - mJ*(mJ + 1)) for mJ in mJlist if mJ < J], 1)
14    Jm = np.diag([hbar * np.sqrt(J*(J+1) - mJ*(mJ - 1)) for mJ in mJlist if mJ > -J], -1)
15    Jx = (Jp + Jm) / 2
16    Jy = (Jp - Jm) / 2j
17    Jz = np.diag([hbar*mJ for mJ in mJlist])
18    J2 = Jx**2 + Jy**2 + Jz**2
19    basisvecs_mJ = [vec for vec in np.identity(n_mJ)]
20    return Jx, Jy, Jz, J2, n_mJ, mJlist, basisvecs_mJ

```

---

Using the above prescription to construct a matrix representation of the  $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$  operator with  $J = \frac{1}{2}$  for the  $S_{1/2}$  and  $P_{1/2}$  states, or  $J = \frac{3}{2}$  for the  $P_{3/2}$  state, and to construct a matrix representation of the  $\hat{I}$  operator with  $I = \frac{3}{2}$ , we can explicitly construct a matrix representation of the hyperfine interaction Hamiltonian for any state of the  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  D line. Remaining is to obtain the matrix representations of the two operators in the  $\mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{J}$  product space basis using (2.16) and (2.17), and then we can apply (2.15) to our matrices

```

rev:      117 (94dec1aa1706)
author:   chrisjbillington
date:    Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```

to obtain the matrix representation  $H_{\text{hfs}}^{I \times J}$  of  $\hat{H}_{\text{hfs}}$  for a given  $J$  corresponding to one of the three states on the D line:

$$H_{\text{hfs}}^{I \times J} = \frac{A_{\text{hfs}}}{\hbar^2} \mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{J} + \frac{B_{\text{hfs}}}{\hbar^2} \frac{\frac{3}{2}(\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{J})^2 + \frac{3}{2}\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{J} - I(I+1)J(J+1)}{2I(2I-1)J(2J-1)}, \quad (2.29)$$

where the products of vector components within the dot products are computed with ordinary matrix multiplication. Alternatively, one can use the matrices in their individual subspaces rather than their equivalents in the product space, so long as one interprets the dot products as “Kronecker dot products”:

$$H_{\text{hfs}}^{I \times J} = \frac{A_{\text{hfs}}}{\hbar^2} \mathbf{I} \circledast \mathbf{J} + \frac{B_{\text{hfs}}}{\hbar^2} \frac{3(\mathbf{I} \circledast \mathbf{J})^2 + 3\mathbf{I} \circledast \mathbf{J} - I(I+1)J(J+1)}{2I(2I-1)J(2J-1)}, \quad (2.30)$$

where  $\circledast$  is the Kronecker dot product:

$$\mathbf{I} \circledast \mathbf{J} \equiv I_x \otimes J_x + I_y \otimes J_y + I_z \otimes J_z. \quad (2.31)$$

In the above way one can construct an explicit matrix representation of  $\hat{H}_{\text{hfs}}$  in the  $I \times J$  basis for the hyperfine interaction for a given  $L_J$  state of the D line.

### Column vectors in the $I \times J$ basis

Because the matrix representations  $\mathbf{I}$  and  $\mathbf{J}$  of the electron and nuclear angular momentum operators were constructed in the  $\{|m_I\rangle\}$  and  $\{|m_J\rangle\}$  bases of their respective subspaces, the matrices we have constructed are in the basis  $I \times J$  with basis vectors:

$$I \times J = \left\{ |m_I m_J\rangle \mid |m_I\rangle \in \{|m_I\rangle\}, |m_J\rangle \in \{|m_J\rangle\} \right\}, \quad (2.32)$$

where  $|m_I m_J\rangle = |m_I\rangle \otimes |m_J\rangle$ . The vector representation  $\psi$  of a state vector  $|\psi\rangle$  in this basis is:

$$\psi = \begin{bmatrix} \langle m_I=I m_J=J | \psi \rangle \\ \langle m_I=I m_J=J-1 | \psi \rangle \\ \vdots \\ \langle m_I=I m_J=-J | \psi \rangle \\ \langle m_I=I-1 m_J=J | \psi \rangle \\ \langle m_I=I-1 m_J=J-1 | \psi \rangle \\ \vdots \\ \langle m_I=-I m_J=-J | \psi \rangle \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.33)$$

The hyperfine Hamiltonian is not diagonal in the  $\{|m_I m_J\rangle\}$  basis. The basis in which it is diagonal—the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis—will be discussed in section 2.3.4.

### 2.3.3 Zeeman sublevels

The states differing only in their  $m_F$  quantum numbers—called Zeeman sublevels—are degenerate in energy with respect to the hyperfine Hamiltonian, but an external magnetic field lifts this degeneracy. The Zeeman effect [22,35] results in an energy shift proportional to the external magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}$  and to a system’s magnetic moment  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ :

$$V = -\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B}. \quad (2.34)$$

Our atom is a composite particle, made of a nucleus with its own intrinsic magnetic moment, an electron with its own intrinsic one as well, and a contribution from the orbital motion of the electron about the nucleus. Each magnetic moment is proportional to the angular momentum of the subsystem in question, with the proportionality constants,

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

called Landé g-factors written as dimensionless multiples of  $-\mu_B/\hbar$ , where  $\mu_B$  is the Bohr magneton.<sup>20</sup> Since  $J$  is a good quantum number so long as energy shifts are smaller than the (large) energy spacing between the three  $L_J$  states of the D line, on the level we work we don't consider the electron spin and orbital angular momenta separately, rather we encapsulate them with a single, empirically determined Landé g-factor  $g_J$  [35] for the magnetic moment of the electron in each of the three  $L_J$  states. Similarly we consider the nucleus as a single spin with an experimentally determined  $g_I$  [35], resulting in a Zeeman Hamiltonian:

$$\hat{H}_Z = -\hat{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B} \quad (2.35)$$

$$= -(\hat{\mu}_I + \hat{\mu}_J) \cdot \mathbf{B} \quad (2.36)$$

$$= \left( \frac{g_I \mu_B}{\hbar} \hat{I} + \frac{g_J \mu_B}{\hbar} \hat{J} \right) \cdot \mathbf{B}. \quad (2.37)$$

Separate  $g_S$  and  $g_L$  values are known and can be used in two terms instead of the one containing  $\hat{J}$  above if  $J$  is not a good quantum number, but in the regime we work that is not usually the case (and if it were, the fine and hyperfine structure Hamiltonians above would also be inadequate since they assume that  $J$  is a good quantum number). If  $J$  is a good quantum number then it is more accurate to use the above expression with empirically measured  $g_J$  values, since they encapsulate QED effects and corrections due to the multi-electron structure of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  that are not captured by the simple Zeeman Hamiltonian with separate  $\hat{S}$  and  $\hat{L}$  terms [35].

If the energy shifts from the Zeeman effect are small compared to the hyperfine splitting, then  $F$  (the total spin quantum number, defined in the next section) is a good quantum number and a given hyperfine level can be treated as a single magnetic moment subject to the Zeeman Hamiltonian:

$$\hat{H}_{Z\text{lin}} = \frac{g_F \mu_B}{\hbar} \hat{F} \cdot \mathbf{B}, \quad (2.38)$$

where [35]

$$g_F = g_J \frac{F(F+1) - I(I+1) + J(J+1)}{2F(F+1)} + g_I \frac{F(F+1) + I(I+1) - J(J+1)}{2F(F+1)}. \quad (2.39)$$

The direction in which each Zeeman sublevel shifts in energy for small magnetic fields is depicted in Figure 2.3. Experimentally, Zeeman shifts that depart from this linear regime are not infrequently encountered, and so it is an approximation that cannot always be made.

An explicit matrix representation  $\hat{H}_Z$  of  $\hat{H}_Z$  in the  $\{|m_I m_J\rangle\}$  basis for each of the three  $L_J$  states of the D line can be constructed by applying (2.37) to the matrix representations of  $\hat{I}$  and  $\hat{J}$  in that basis:

$$\hat{H}_Z = -\hat{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B}, \quad (2.40)$$

where

$$\hat{\mu} = -\frac{g_I \mu_B}{\hbar} \hat{I} - \frac{g_J \mu_B}{\hbar} \hat{J} \quad (2.41)$$

$$= -\frac{g_I \mu_B}{\hbar} \hat{I} \otimes \hat{I} - \frac{g_J \mu_B}{\hbar} \hat{J} \otimes \hat{J}. \quad (2.42)$$

### 2.3.4 Putting it all together: the $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$ basis

So far we have described how to construct a matrix representation of the fine structure Hamiltonian for the three  $L_J$  states of the  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  D line, as well as matrix representations of

<sup>20</sup>We are using the sign convention that defines the Landé g-factor  $g_J$  for the electron as positive.

each state's hyperfine and Zeeman Hamiltonians, these latter two in the same  $\{|m_I m_J\rangle\}$  basis. In the subspaces of each of the three  $L_J$  states then, we can sum together the hyperfine and Zeeman Hamiltonians to form (a matrix representation of) a Hamiltonian that takes interactions into account:

$$\overset{I \times J}{H_{P_{3/2}}} = \overset{I \times J}{H_{\text{hfs} P_{3/2}}} + \overset{I \times J}{H_{Z P_{3/2}}}, \quad (2.43)$$

$$\overset{I \times J}{H_{P_{1/2}}} = \overset{I \times J}{H_{\text{hfs} P_{1/2}}} + \overset{I \times J}{H_{Z P_{1/2}}}, \quad (2.44)$$

$$\overset{I \times J}{H_{S_{1/2}}} = \overset{I \times J}{H_{\text{hfs} S_{1/2}}} + \overset{I \times J}{H_{Z S_{1/2}}}, \quad (2.45)$$

where the subscripts  $P_{3/2}$ ,  $P_{1/2}$ , and  $S_{1/2}$  on the terms on the right hand side indicate that the expressions for the matrix elements of the hyperfine and Zeeman Hamiltonians are to be evaluated using the specific values of  $J$ ,  $A_{\text{hfs}}$ ,  $B_{\text{hfs}}$ , and  $g_J$  relevant to that state. The total Hamiltonian for the D line including fine structure, hyperfine structure and the Zeeman interaction is then

$$\hat{H} = \hat{H}_{\text{fs}} + (\hat{H}_{P_{3/2}} \oplus \hat{H}_{P_{1/2}} \oplus \hat{H}_{S_{1/2}}) \quad (2.46)$$

$$\Rightarrow \hat{H} = (\hbar\omega_{D_2} \hat{1}_{P_{3/2}} + \hat{H}_{P_{3/2}}) \oplus (\hbar\omega_{D_1} \hat{1}_{P_{1/2}} + \hat{H}_{P_{1/2}}) \oplus \hat{H}_{S_{1/2}}, \quad (2.47)$$

the matrix representation of which in the  $\{|L_J m_I m_J\rangle\}$  basis is the block diagonal matrix

$$\overset{I \times J}{H_{D^{87}\text{Rb}}} = \begin{bmatrix} [\hbar\omega_{D_2} + \overset{I \times J}{H_{P_{3/2}}}] & & \\ & [\hbar\omega_{D_1} + \overset{I \times J}{H_{P_{1/2}}}] & \\ & & [\overset{I \times J}{H_{S_{1/2}}}] \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.48)$$

where addition of scalars with matrices implies the addition of a scalar multiple of the appropriately sized identity matrix.

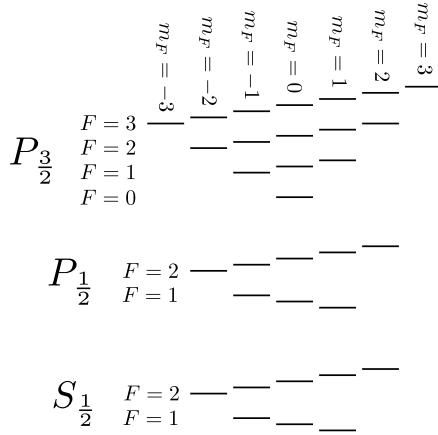
While  $\overset{I \times J}{H_{D^{87}\text{Rb}}}$  is a block diagonal matrix, each of the three submatrices is not diagonal, since  $m_I$  and  $m_J$  are not good quantum numbers for the hyperfine interaction

(though they are good quantum numbers for the Zeeman interaction and hence  $\overset{I \times J}{H_{D^{87}\text{Rb}}}$  becomes approximately diagonal at high magnetic field). Once one has constructed

$\overset{I \times J}{H_{D^{87}\text{Rb}}}$  or its submatrices, there are two other bases one might consider transforming the submatrices into depending on the circumstances. One is the  $\Sigma\mathcal{F} = \{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis<sup>21</sup>, in which the matrix representation of the hyperfine interaction is diagonal. The matrix representation of the Zeeman Hamiltonian is also approximately diagonal in the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis, so long as one is in the linear Zeeman regime. Furthermore, the transition dipole moments for optical transitions are most easily calculated in the  $\{|L_J F m_F\rangle\}$  basis, as we'll see in the next subsection. For these reasons the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis is the most commonly used and referred to.

The  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis is defined as the simultaneous eigenbasis of the  $\hat{F}^2$  and  $\hat{F}_z$  operators, which are the total (squared) and  $z$  component of the total angular momentum operator  $\hat{F} = \hat{I} + \hat{J}$ , the matrix forms  $F^2$  and  $F_z$  of which in the  $|m_I m_J\rangle$  basis can be

<sup>21</sup>The name  $\Sigma\mathcal{F}$  refers to the fact that this is the basis that lends itself to the interpretation of the total space being the direct sum of subspaces, each of which has a well defined  $F$  quantum number. So if  $I \times J$  is a basis for a product space with  $(2I+1) \times (2J+1)$  dimensions, then  $\Sigma\mathcal{F}$  is a basis for a sum space with  $\sum_i (2F_i + 1)$  dimensions, where  $F_i$  ranges from  $|I - J|$  to  $I + J$  in integer steps. The product and sum bases have the same dimensionality and span the same space, so the difference is only in the identification and composition of their component subspaces.



**Figure 2.3:** The 32 states of the rubidium 87 D line, ordered vertically by energy (not to scale) in a small magnetic field. At zero magnetic field, Zeeman sublevels sharing a common  $F$  quantum number and within the same hyperfine level are degenerate. At small magnetic fields this degeneracy is lifted, with state energies shifting in the directions depicted. However,  $F$  is no longer a good quantum number at nonzero magnetic field, as most of the non-degenerate sublevels are actually equal to linear combinations of two states of different  $F$  quantum numbers. Nevertheless at low magnetic fields the states are labelled using  $F$  anyway, since one  $F$  state dominates the linear combination, and at higher magnetic fields the states are labelled using an index  $\alpha$ , equal to the value of  $F$  of the state that would dominate the superposition if the field were smoothly reduced to zero.  $m_F$  remains a good quantum number at nonzero magnetic field however, and so at all fields a state can be specified by the numbers  $L, J, \alpha$  (equal to  $F$  at small field) and  $m_F$ .

constructed from the matrix forms of the individual angular momentum operators:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F} &= \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{J} \\ &= \mathbf{I} \otimes \mathbb{I} + \mathbb{I} \otimes \mathbf{J} \end{aligned} \quad (2.49)$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_z &= I_z + J_z \\ &= I_z \otimes \mathbb{I} + \mathbb{I} \otimes J_z \end{aligned} \quad (2.50)$$

$$F^2 = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{F} \quad (2.51)$$

The  $\{|Fm_F\rangle\}$  basis allows the eigenstates of the hyperfine interaction to be labelled with  $F$  and  $m_F$  quantum numbers. For a state of the  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  D line with electron total angular momentum quantum number  $J$ , there are  $1 + J + I - |(I - J)|$  hyperfine levels, with  $F$  quantum numbers running from  $|I - J|$  to  $I + J$ . Within each hyperfine level there are  $2F + 1$  degenerate states with different  $m_F$  quantum numbers ranging from  $-F$  to  $F$ . This results in a total of 32 possible states for the rubidium D line, a schematic of which is shown in Figure 2.3.

To transform each submatrix between the  $\{|m_I m_J\rangle\}$  and  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  bases, we use a unitary matrix whose elements are Clebsch–Gordan coefficients, each defined as the inner product of a  $|F m_F\rangle$  state with a  $|m_I m_J\rangle$  state (written in full as  $|I m_I J m_J\rangle$ ), and calculable as [35]

$$\langle I m_I J m_J | F m_F \rangle = (-1)^{I-J+m_F} \sqrt{2F+1} \begin{pmatrix} I & J & F \\ m_I & m_J & -m_F \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.52)$$

where the object in parentheses is a Wigner 3-j symbol. The Clebsch–Gordan coefficients are real:  $\langle F m_F | I m_I J m_J \rangle = \langle I m_I J m_J | F m_F \rangle$ , and are zero unless  $m_I + m_J = m_F$ . Given that the possible range of the  $F$  quantum number is from  $|I - J|$  to  $I + J$ , and the possible range of  $m_F$  quantum numbers is from  $-F$  to  $F$  for each  $F$  (both in integer steps), an explicit construction of the unitary matrix  $U_{CG}$  of Clebsch–Gordan coefficients, in the convention where the column vectors in the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis have  $F$  running from its highest value to lowest from top to bottom, and  $m_F$  also running from highest to lowest within each value of  $F$ , (omitting  $I$  and  $J$  for brevity) is:

$$U_{CG} = \begin{bmatrix} \langle m_I=I m_J=J | F=I+J m_F=F \rangle & \dots & \langle m_I=I m_J=J | F=I+J m_F=-F \rangle & \dots & \langle m_I=I m_J=J | F=|I-J| m_F=-F \rangle \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \vdots \\ \langle m_I=-I m_J=J | F=I+J m_F=F \rangle & & & & \langle m_I=-I m_J=-J | F=|I-J| m_F=-F \rangle \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \vdots \\ \langle m_I=-I m_J=-J | F=I+J m_F=F \rangle & & & & \langle m_I=-I m_J=-J | F=|I-J| m_F=-F \rangle \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.53)$$

This the matrix that takes vectors from the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis to the  $\{|m_I m_J\rangle\}$  basis, so its Hermitian conjugate  $U_{CG}^\dagger$  is needed for the inverse transformation (which is equal to the transpose since the matrix elements are real). Within the convention we're using to order the matrix elements, the vector representation  $\psi$  of a state vector  $|\psi\rangle$  in the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis of one of the  $L_J$  states is:

$$\psi = \begin{bmatrix} \langle F=I+J m_F=F | \psi \rangle \\ \langle F=I+J m_F=F-1 | \psi \rangle \\ \vdots \\ \langle F=I+J m_F=-F | \psi \rangle \\ \langle F=I+J-1 m_F=F | \psi \rangle \\ \langle F=I+J-1 m_F=F-1 | \psi \rangle \\ \vdots \\ \langle m_F=|I-J| m_F=-F | \psi \rangle \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.54)$$

Each submatrix of the total Hamiltonian for the D line can be transformed into its  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis by using a unitary matrix of Clebsch–Gordan coefficients with the appropriate value of  $J$ , yielding a total Hamiltonian for the rubidium  $87$  D line in the  $\{|L_J F m_F\rangle\}$  basis:

$$H_D^{87\text{Rb}} = \begin{bmatrix} \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \hbar\omega_{D_2} + U_{CG\ 3/2}^\dagger H_{P_{3/2}} U_{CG\ 3/2} \end{smallmatrix} \right] & \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \hbar\omega_{D_1} + U_{CG\ 1/2}^\dagger H_{P_{1/2}} U_{CG\ 1/2} \end{smallmatrix} \right] & \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} U_{CG\ 1/2}^\dagger H_{S_{1/2}} U_{CG\ 1/2} \end{smallmatrix} \right] \\ & \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \hbar\omega_{D_2} + H_{P_{3/2}} \end{smallmatrix} \right] & \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \hbar\omega_{D_1} + H_{P_{1/2}} \end{smallmatrix} \right] & \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} H_{S_{1/2}} \end{smallmatrix} \right] \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.55)$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \hbar\omega_{D_2} + H_{P_{3/2}} \end{smallmatrix} \right] & \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \hbar\omega_{D_1} + H_{P_{1/2}} \end{smallmatrix} \right] & \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} H_{S_{1/2}} \end{smallmatrix} \right] \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.56)$$

where the additional subscripts on the unitary matrices indicates the value of  $J$  used in its construction. Armed with the  $\{|F, m_F\rangle\}$  basis, we have little remaining reason to use the  $\{|m_I m_J\rangle\}$  basis any more.

Here is a recap of what we have taken into account with our model of the Rubidium D line:

- The two lowest quantum numbers  $L = 0$  and  $L = 1$  of the electron's orbital angular momentum. This yields the S groundstate and P excited state.
- Fine structure: the two possible orientations of the electron's spin with respect to its orbital angular momentum. This splits the P excited state into two states,  $P_{1/2}$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

and  $P_{3/2}$ , and leaves the S groundstate as the single state  $S_{1/2}$ . The energies of these three states are determined entirely empirically—without any modelling of the fine structure.

- Hyperfine structure: The possible orientations of the electron's total angular momentum with respect to the nuclear angular momentum. This splits each state so far into  $1 + J + I - |(I - J)|$  hyperfine states. The hyperfine interaction is treated semi-empirically, using an analytic form of the hyperfine interaction but with empirically determined coupling constants within each of the three  $L_J$  states of the D line.
- Zeeman effect: the possible orientation of the angular momenta  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ —or at low field their sum  $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ —onto an external magnetic field. The Zeeman Hamiltonian is modelled analytically, but with empirically determined Landé  $g$  factors for each of the three  $L_J$  states of the D line.

The above considerations allow us to construct a Hamiltonian, as a concrete matrix representation, for all 32 possible states of the rubidium D line in a fixed magnetic field, in a basis in which it is diagonal for the case of zero magnetic field. In a nonzero magnetic field, one can analytically diagonalise the  $S_{1/2}$  and  $P_{1/2}$  blocks of this matrix using the Breit–Rabi formula [36, p. 347; 41], but the same cannot be done for the entire D line, and diagonalisation must be performed numerically for the  $P_{3/2}$  block. At nonzero magnetic field,  $F$  ceases to be a good quantum number, but states are nonetheless labelled using a variable  $\alpha$ , defined as the value of  $F$  a state *would* have if the magnetic field were reduced to zero.  $m_F$  remains a good quantum number however, and thus at nonzero magnetic field the  $\{|\alpha m_F\rangle\}$  basis, is the one in which the Hamiltonian is diagonal, with the transformation between it and the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis requiring numerical diagonalisation.

If the magnetic field is static, then this Hamiltonian  $\hat{H}_{\text{D}^{87}\text{Rb}}$  is a time independent Hamiltonian, to which additional time-dependent Hamiltonians can be added to take into account optical or RF transitions, detailed below. In a dynamic magnetic field, only  $\hat{H}_{\text{hfs}}$  is time-independent, in which case the Zeeman Hamiltonian will also be part of the time-dependent part of the Hamiltonian. This has implications for the use of an interaction picture (described in section 3.2.2), in which the time independent part of a Hamiltonian can be analytically removed from the equations of motion, which can make further computations more tractable both analytically and numerically.

### 2.3.5 Optical dipole transitions

Optical transitions due to laser fields appear as off-diagonal matrix elements in the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis<sup>22</sup>. A given laser of a certain polarisation may give rise to nonzero transition matrix elements between several different pairs of states, depending on selection rules.

The potential the outer electron of rubidium is subject to in a classical electric field is the electric dipole potential [20, 36]:

$$\hat{H}_{\text{d}} = -\hat{\mathbf{d}} \cdot \mathbf{E}, \quad (2.57)$$

where  $\mathbf{E}$  is the classical electric field and  $\hat{\mathbf{d}}$  is the electric dipole operator:

$$\hat{\mathbf{d}} = -e\hat{\mathbf{r}}, \quad (2.58)$$

which gives the electric dipole of the atom in terms of the electron's charge  $-e$  and its position operator (with respect to the nucleus)  $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ . A single matrix element of  $\hat{H}_{\text{d}}$  for coupling an initial state  $|L_J F m_F\rangle$  to a final state  $|L'_J F' m'_F\rangle$  is therefore:

$$\langle L'_J F' m'_F | \hat{H}_{\text{d}} | L_J F m_F \rangle = \langle L'_J F' m'_F | e\hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{E} | L_J F m_F \rangle, \quad (2.59)$$

<sup>22</sup>The matrix elements can be obtained in the  $\{|\alpha m_F\rangle\}$  basis at nonzero magnetic field via the numerically computed transformation mentioned in the previous subsection

which we will abbreviate as

$$\langle n' | \hat{H}_q | n \rangle = \langle n' | e \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{E} | n \rangle, \quad (2.60)$$

<sup>23</sup>The choice of the symbol  $n$  is unrelated to the principal quantum number, which does not vary between the states of the  $D$  line.

writing the initial state  $|L_J F m_F\rangle = |n\rangle$  and final state  $|L'_J F' m'_F\rangle = |n'\rangle$ , encapsulating the set of quantum numbers as a single index<sup>23</sup> for the state.

### Plane waves

The electric field of a plane wave of amplitude  $E_0$ , polarisation unit vector  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$  and angular frequency  $\omega$  can be written:

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{E_0}{2} (\hat{\mathbf{e}} e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} + \hat{\mathbf{e}}^* e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}), \quad (2.61)$$

where \* is complex conjugation, which in the case of a real valued polarisation unit vector  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$  does nothing, making the above equal to a cosine wave  $E_0 \hat{\mathbf{e}} \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)$  as expected for a linearly polarised plane wave. However, (2.61) also allows for arbitrary circular or elliptical polarisation, if  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$  is allowed to have complex components. This comes with the caveat, however, that the amplitude  $E_0$  is a misnomer in these cases and no longer corresponds to any actual amplitude. For example, a circularly polarised plane wave propagating in the  $z$  direction constructed using complex polarisation vector  $\hat{\mathbf{e}} = \mp(\hat{x} \pm i\hat{y})/\sqrt{2}$  and “amplitude”  $E_0$  actually has an electric field vector with constant magnitude  $E_0/\sqrt{2}$ . The “amplitude”  $E_0$  in (2.61) is actually equal to  $\sqrt{2}E_{\text{rms}}$  and thus only equal to the peak electric field strength in the case of linear polarisation. Using the intensity of the beam<sup>24</sup>  $I = \epsilon_0 c E_{\text{rms}}^2$  instead, which is less ambiguous and more relatable to experimentalists [37], resolves this potential confusion:<sup>25</sup>

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\epsilon_0 c}} (\hat{\mathbf{e}} e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} + \hat{\mathbf{e}}^* e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}). \quad (2.62)$$

### The spherical basis

Consider one of the three polarisation unit vectors  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_q$  for which the photon has a well defined angular momentum projection in the  $z$  direction:

$$\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\pm} = \mp(\hat{x} \pm i\hat{y})/\sqrt{2}, \quad (2.63)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{e}}_0 = \hat{z}, \quad (2.64)$$

where  $q = \pm 1$  is denoted with the subscript  $\pm$ . These are the basis vectors of the spherical tensor basis [36], which is the basis in which it is easiest to compute matrix elements, as well as the one in which it is easiest to think about which transitions a given laser will drive. Light with polarisation vector  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\pm}$  is called  $\sigma^{\pm}$  polarised, and excites groundstates to excited states that differ in  $m_F$  quantum number by  $\pm 1$ . A single beam with this polarisation would have to be propagating in the  $z$  direction, with left or right hand circular polarisation. Light with polarisation vector  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_0$  is called  $\pi$  polarised, and drives transitions between states of equal  $m_F$  quantum numbers. A single beam with this polarisation would have to be propagating with a  $\mathbf{k}$  vector in the  $x, y$  plane and be linearly polarised in the  $z$  direction. However, lasers with propagation directions and polarisation vectors different from these three configurations can be decomposed into the spherical basis. For example, light with linear polarisation vector in the  $x, y$  plane drives both  $\sigma^+$  and  $\sigma^-$  transitions.

The spherical basis is defined somewhat differently than how we are used to for ordinary real-valued vectors. The components  $A_q$  of a vector  $\mathbf{A}$  in the spherical basis are

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

defined as the coefficients of *complex conjugates* of the basis vectors:

$$\mathbf{A} = \sum_q A_q \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q^* = \sum_q (-1)^q A_q \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{-q}, \quad (2.65)$$

with the second equality resulting from the property of the basis vectors that

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q^* = (-1)^q \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{-q}, \quad (2.66)$$

and the dot product in terms of the spherical basis components of two vectors is:

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \sum_q (-1)^q A_q B_{-q}. \quad (2.67)$$

The definition (2.65) has the counter-intuitive consequence that the unit vectors themselves, written in terms of their components  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q = ((\varepsilon_q)_-, (\varepsilon_q)_0, (\varepsilon_q)_+)$  in the spherical basis are:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_- = (0, 0, -1), \quad (2.68)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_0 = (0, 1, 0), \quad (2.69)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_+ = (-1, 0, 0), \quad (2.70)$$

that is, the unit vector  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q$  has a component of  $(-1)^q$  in the  $-q$  position, and zeros elsewhere.

Considering a plane wave with polarisation vector equal to one of the spherical basis vectors  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q$ , we have the electric field:

$$\mathbf{E}_q(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\varepsilon_0 c}} (\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} + \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q^* e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}), \quad (2.71)$$

which, removing the complex conjugation using (2.66), can be written:

$$\mathbf{E}_q(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\varepsilon_0 c}} (\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} + (-1)^q \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{-q} e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}). \quad (2.72)$$

### The dipole approximation

Substituting (2.72) into (2.59) results in the matrix element of the dipole Hamiltonian for a  $q$  polarised plane wave:

$$\langle n' | \hat{H}_d(q, I) | n \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\varepsilon_0 c}} \left( \langle n' | e \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} | n \rangle + (-1)^q \langle n' | e \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{-q} e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} | n \rangle \right). \quad (2.73)$$

The *dipole approximation* is the approximation that the spatial extent of the electron's orbital is much smaller than the wavelength of the light, and thus that the factors of  $e^{\pm i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$  are approximately constant over the integral and can be taken outside it, with  $\mathbf{r}$  taken to be the expectation value of the atom's position<sup>26</sup>. For optical wavelengths this is a good approximation, yielding our matrix element in the dipole approximation:

$$\langle n' | \hat{H}_d(q, I) | n \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\varepsilon_0 c}} \left( \langle n' | e \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q | n \rangle e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} + (-1)^q \langle n' | e \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{-q} | n \rangle e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} \right). \quad (2.74)$$

Evaluating the dot products using (2.67), we get  $\hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_q = \sum_p (-1)^p \hat{r}_p (\varepsilon_q)_{-p} = \hat{r}_q$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{-q} = \sum_p (-1)^p \hat{r}_p (\varepsilon_{-q})_{-p} = \hat{r}_{-q}$ , where  $\hat{r}_q$  are the components of the position operator

<sup>26</sup>The resulting classical position  $\mathbf{r}$  of the atom should not be confused with the electron's position operator  $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$  with respect to the nucleus. Strictly speaking, (2.73) should have  $\mathbf{r}$  in the exponents replaced with a quantum operator with a different name to signify that it is the absolute position of the electron rather than the position relative to the nucleus, but I suspect this would cause more confusion than it would resolve.

$\hat{r}$  in the spherical basis, the position space representations of which are proportional to the  $\ell = 1$  spherical harmonics and the radial coordinate  $r$ :

$$\langle r, \theta, \phi | \hat{r}_\pm | r, \theta, \phi \rangle = \mp \frac{r}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta e^{\pm i\phi}, \quad (2.75)$$

$$\langle r, \theta, \phi | \hat{r}_0 | r, \theta, \phi \rangle = r \cos(\theta). \quad (2.76)$$

We now have our final expression for the matrix element  $\langle n' | \hat{H}_d(q, I) | n \rangle$  of the dipole Hamiltonian for laser intensity  $I$ , angular frequency and wavenumber  $\omega$  and  $\mathbf{k}$  respectively, and complex polarisation vector  $\hat{\epsilon}_q$ , in the dipole approximation in terms of matrix elements of  $e\hat{r}_q$ , the calculation of which is detailed below:

$$\langle n' | \hat{H}_d(q, I) | n \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\varepsilon_0 c}} \left( \langle n' | e\hat{r}_q | n \rangle e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} + (-1)^q \langle n' | e\hat{r}_{-q} | n \rangle e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} \right). \quad (2.77)$$

A further approximation often used is to approximate the atom as stationary, replacing the  $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}$  from the exponents with a constant (usually zero if the exact phase of the optical field is not of interest). Alternately, if the atom is moving at an approximately constant velocity, the  $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}$  term can be absorbed into  $\omega$  resulting in an effective Doppler-shifted angular frequency as in section 2.1.1. We will leave the  $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}$  terms where they are, but note that they are often absent in most literature sources for the preceding reasons.

### The rotating wave approximation

If the plane wave's angular frequency  $\omega$  is close to the resonant angular frequency  $\omega_{D_1}$  or  $\omega_{D_2}$  of the D<sub>1</sub> or D<sub>2</sub> line, then one of the two exponential terms is oscillating at a frequency much further from resonance (approximately  $2\omega$ ) than the other, and thus does not contribute significantly to coupling between states. Discarding it is known as the *rotating wave approximation* (RWA), so called because in an interaction picture (section 3.2.2) where the evolution of the base Hamiltonian  $\hat{H}_{D^{87}\text{Rb}}$  is factored out—the so called *rotating frame*—this fact is more readily apparent and a formal approximation can be made showing that the off-resonant term averages to zero over time scales much shorter than any other dynamics. Which term is discarded depends on whether the transition being considered is from a groundstate to excited state, or vice-versa. Our matrix element  $\langle n' | \hat{H}_d(q, I) | n \rangle$  in the RWA becomes:

$$\langle n' | \hat{H}_d(q, I) | n \rangle \xrightarrow{\text{RWA}} \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\varepsilon_0 c}} \langle n' | e\hat{r}_q | n \rangle e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}, & E_{n'} > E_n \\ \frac{(-1)^q}{2} \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\varepsilon_0 c}} \langle n' | e\hat{r}_{-q} | n \rangle e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}, & E_{n'} < E_n \end{cases}. \quad (2.78)$$

The spherical basis components  $\hat{r}_q$  of the position operator  $\hat{r}$  are not Hermitian operators, instead obeying the following relation [36]:

$$\hat{r}_q^\dagger = (-1)^q \hat{r}_{-q}, \quad (2.79)$$

$$\Rightarrow \langle n | e\hat{r}_q | n' \rangle^* = (-1)^q \langle n' | e\hat{r}_{-q} | n \rangle, \quad (2.80)$$

allowing us to simplify (2.78) to:

$$\langle n' | \hat{H}_d(q, I) | n \rangle \xrightarrow{\text{RWA}} \begin{cases} \frac{\hbar}{2} \Omega_{n'n}(q, I) e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}, & E_{n'} > E_n \\ \frac{\hbar}{2} \Omega_{nn'}^*(q, I) e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}, & E_{n'} < E_n \end{cases}, \quad (2.81)$$

where  $\Omega_{n'n}(q, I)$  is the *Rabi frequency* of the  $n \rightarrow n'$  transition for polarisation  $q$  and intensity ( $I$ ),

$$\Omega_{n'n}(q, I) \equiv \hbar \sqrt{\frac{2I}{\epsilon_0 c}} \langle n' | e\hat{r}_q | n \rangle, \quad (2.82)$$

with the symmetry that  $\Omega_{n'n}(q, I) = \Omega_{nn'}^*(q, I)$ . Because of this symmetry, the electric dipole Hamiltonian for a plane wave in the rotating wave approximation is Hermitian, and all its matrix elements can be computed considering only transitions from groundstate to excited state (with the Rabi frequencies for the reverse transitions being simply the complex conjugates of those of the forward transitions).

The rotating wave approximation is accurate when  $\omega - \omega_0 \gg |\omega + \omega_0|$ , which is the case for transitions being driven close to resonance. When far off-resonant light is being used however—for example to impart optical dipole forces as in optical traps—it may not be a good approximation, and the full matrix elements (2.77) of the dipole Hamiltonian may need to be considered.

### Dipole matrix elements

We now move on to how to compute the dipole matrix elements

$$\langle n' | e\hat{r}_q | n \rangle \equiv \langle L'_J F' m'_F | e\hat{r}_q | L_J F m_F \rangle. \quad (2.83)$$

Using these matrix elements, one can compute Rabi frequencies for matrix elements of the dipole Hamiltonian (2.81) in the rotating wave approximation, or to calculate the full matrix elements (2.77) of the dipole Hamiltonian.

In the spherical basis we've been working in, most of the integrals required to compute these matrix elements can be treated analytically, and there are a series of reductions that can be made to ultimately reduce the matrix elements down to a product of an analytically computable coefficient depending only on angular momentum quantum numbers, and an experimentally measurable ‘reduced’ dipole matrix element.

Following [35], the dependence on the photon angular momentum projection quantum number  $q$  and atomic angular momentum projection quantum numbers  $m_F$  and  $m'_F$  can be encapsulated in a Clebsch–Gordan coefficient using the Wigner–Eckart theorem, allowing us to write:

$$\langle L'_J F' m'_F | e\hat{r}_q | L_J F m_F \rangle = \langle F' m'_F | F 1 m_F q \rangle \langle L'_J F' | e\hat{r} | L_J F \rangle \quad (2.84)$$

$$= (-1)^{F-1+m'_F} \sqrt{2F+1} \begin{pmatrix} F & 1 & F' \\ m_F & q & -m'_F \end{pmatrix} \langle L'_J F' | e\hat{r} | L_J F \rangle, \quad (2.85)$$

where the object in parentheses is a Wigner 3-j symbol, and  $\langle L'_J F' | e\hat{r} | L_J F \rangle$  is the ‘reduced’ matrix element for the transition from  $|L_J F\rangle$  to  $|L'_J F'\rangle$  free of dependence on angular momentum projection quantum numbers. Due to the fact that the Clebsch–Gordan coefficient is zero unless  $m_F + q = m_F$ , these matrix elements are zero unless the final and initial states are being coupled by a laser of the correct polarisation to conserve angular momentum projection in the  $z$  direction, one of the selection rules of optical transitions.<sup>27</sup>

The final reduction is to express this reduced matrix element as yet another analytic coefficient multiplied by a reduced matrix element that doesn't depend on the  $F$  quantum numbers:

$$\langle L'_J F' | e\hat{r} | L_J F \rangle = (-1)^{F+J'+1+I} \sqrt{(2F+1)(2J'+1)} \begin{Bmatrix} J' & J & 1 \\ F & F' & I \end{Bmatrix} \langle L'_J | e\hat{r} | L_J \rangle, \quad (2.86)$$

<sup>27</sup>Observe equation (2.77) however, and note that for the case of  $\sigma^\pm$  light, both  $q = \pm 1$  dipole matrix elements are present, and thus  $\sigma^\pm$  light couples a groundstate to both  $m'_F = m_F \pm 1$  excited states, with one being far off resonance and discarded by the rotating wave approximation for the case of near-resonant light.

where  $I$  is the nuclear spin quantum number, the object in curly braces is a Wigner 6-j symbol, and  $\langle L'_{J'} | e\hat{r} | L_J \rangle$  is a reduced matrix element for the transition from  $|L_J\rangle$  to  $|L'_{J'}\rangle$  free of dependence on  $F$  quantum numbers.

This final reduced matrix element can be linked to experimentally known numerical values via the linewidths  $\Gamma_{D_1}$  and  $\Gamma_{D_2}$  of D<sub>1</sub> and D<sub>2</sub> lines [36, eq. 7.3.7.4]:

$$\Gamma = \frac{\omega_0^3}{3\pi\epsilon_0\hbar c^3} \frac{2J_g + 1}{2J_e + 1} |\langle L'_{J_g} | e\hat{r} | L_{J_e} \rangle|^2, \quad (2.87)$$

where  $\Gamma$  and  $\omega_0$  are the linewidth and resonant (angular) frequency respectively of the transition,  $L'_{J_g}$  is the groundstate ( $S_{1/2}$ ) and  $L_{J_e}$  is the excited state (either  $P_{1/2}$  or  $P_{3/2}$ ) of the transition. Thus the reduced matrix elements for transitions from excited to groundstates can be expressed in terms of known constants. For the reduced matrix elements for transitions from ground to excited states instead, one cannot simply take the complex conjugates of the excited-to-ground reduced matrix elements—the reduced matrix elements are defined instead such that they have the following property [36, eq. 7.3.5.1]:

$$\langle L_J | e\hat{r} | L'_{J'} \rangle = (-1)^{J-J'} \sqrt{\frac{2J'+1}{2J+1}} \langle L'_{J'} | e\hat{r} | L_J \rangle^*. \quad (2.88)$$

Putting these together gives the following reduced matrix elements for the D<sub>1</sub> and D<sub>2</sub> lines in both directions:

$$\langle S_{1/2} | e\hat{r} | P_{1/2} \rangle = \sqrt{\frac{3\pi\epsilon_0\hbar c^3\Gamma_{D_1}}{\omega_{D_1}^3}} \quad (2.89)$$

$$\langle S_{1/2} | e\hat{r} | P_{3/2} \rangle = \sqrt{\frac{6\pi\epsilon_0\hbar c^3\Gamma_{D_2}}{\omega_{D_2}^3}} \quad (2.90)$$

$$\langle P_{1/2} | e\hat{r} | S_{1/2} \rangle = \langle S_{1/2} | e\hat{r} | P_{1/2} \rangle^* \quad (2.91)$$

$$\langle P_{3/2} | e\hat{r} | S_{1/2} \rangle = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle S_{1/2} | e\hat{r} | P_{3/2} \rangle^* \quad (2.92)$$

The first two of these, having only their absolute values related to the linewidths and frequencies via (2.87), have an undetermined phase factor which we have taken to be equal to +1. Since only relative phases are important, if we limit ourselves to only one of the D<sub>1</sub> or D<sub>2</sub> lines at a time, all dipole matrix elements, being proportional to these reduced dipole matrix elements, will have the correct relative phases. However, we are imposing a fixed phase on *both* the reduced dipole matrix elements for the D line. We can verify that a relative phase factor of +1 between the two reduced dipole matrix elements is the correct choice by decomposing [35] the reduced matrix elements into yet another Wigner-6j symbol and a reduced dipole matrix element  $\langle L' = \frac{1}{2} | e\hat{r} | L = 1 \rangle$ , common to both fine structure lines:

$$\langle L'_{J'} | e\hat{r} | L_J \rangle = (-1)^{J+L+S+1} \sqrt{(2J+1)(2L'+1)} \left\{ \begin{matrix} L' & L & 1 \\ J & J' & S \end{matrix} \right\} \langle L' | e\hat{r} | L \rangle, \quad (2.93)$$

where  $S = 1/2$  is the electron spin. This expression can be used to verify the ratio:

$$\frac{\langle S_{1/2} | e\hat{r} | P_{3/2} \rangle}{\langle S_{1/2} | e\hat{r} | P_{1/2} \rangle} = \sqrt{2}, \quad (2.94)$$

confirming that the choice of relative phase factor +1 between the two  $L_J$  reduced dipole matrix elements is the correct one.

```
rev:      117 (94dec1aa1706)
author:   chrisjbillington
date:     Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary:  hvsc
```

We have now arrived at the ground floor of reductionism for most experimental atomic physicists when it comes to optical transitions, with the values of the transition dipole matrix elements resting on the foundation of empirically measured reduced dipole matrix elements, and calculable by traversing this section in reverse.

### 2.3.6 Magnetic dipole transitions

After all the complexity of optical dipole transitions, magnetic dipole transitions—for either RF transitions between Zeeman sublevels, or microwave transitions between hyperfine states—are relatively simple. The matrix elements in the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis for a perturbing magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}(t)$  are simply those of the Zeeman Hamiltonian (2.40):

$$\langle F' m'_F | \hat{H}_Z | F m_F \rangle = -\langle F' m'_F | \hat{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B} | F m_F \rangle, \quad (2.95)$$

which for a magnetic plane wave with linear polarisation  $i \in \{x, y, z\}$  and amplitude  $B_0$ , and in the dipole approximation, is:

$$\langle F' m'_F | \hat{H}_Z(i, B_0) | F m_F \rangle = -\langle F' m'_F | \hat{\mu}_i | F m_F \rangle B_0 \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t). \quad (2.96)$$

The magnetic dipole matrix elements  $\langle F' m'_F | \hat{\mu}_i | F m_F \rangle$  can be computed using the known matrix form (2.41) of the magnetic moment operator  $\mu_i$  in the  $\{|m_I m_J\rangle\}$  basis, and transforming it into the  $\{|F m_F\rangle\}$  basis using a unitary of Clebsch–Gordan coefficients as in (2.52).

As with optical dipole transitions, the cosine can be written as a sum of exponentials, revealing co-rotating and counter-rotating terms:

$$\langle F' m'_F | \hat{H}_Z(i, B_0) | F m_F \rangle = -\frac{B_0}{2} \langle F' m'_F | \hat{\mu}_i | F m_F \rangle (e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} + e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}), \quad (2.97)$$

allowing for a rotating wave approximation and definition of a Rabi frequency as with optical dipole transitions:

$$\langle F' m'_F | \hat{H}_Z(i, B_0) | F m_F \rangle \stackrel{\text{RWA}}{\approx} \begin{cases} \frac{\hbar}{2} \Omega_{F' m'_F F m_F}(i, B_0) e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}, & E_{F' m'_F} > E_{F m_F} \\ \frac{\hbar}{2} \Omega_{F m_F F' m'_F}^*(i) e^{-i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)}, & E_{F' m'_F} < E_{F m_F} \end{cases}, \quad (2.98)$$

where  $\Omega_{F' m'_F F m_F}(i, B_0) = -\hbar B_0 \langle F' m'_F | \hat{H}_Z(i, B_0) | F m_F \rangle$ .

The required linear combinations of the above matrix elements can be used to compute matrix elements for RF waves of different phases, or circular polarisations. It is also often practical, when numerically modelling magnetic dipole transitions, particularly between Zeeman sublevels, to simply include the magnetic field vector as a function as time and evaluate the entire matrix  $H_Z$  directly in whichever basis one is working, rather than decomposing it into fixed frequency waves. This is particularly useful for frequency sweeps and other complex magnetic field sequences, which may not be good candidates for the rotating wave approximation, or may not be well represented well as single-frequency waves at all. This is most practical for transitions between Zeeman sublevels, since the energy splittings can be on the order of MHz and therefore well sampled by numerics with nanosecond to microsecond sized timesteps, which are feasible to numerically compute. Microwave transitions, being 6.8 GHz in  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  would require sub-nanosecond timesteps to simulate in this direct way, and so is more taxing but still within the range of possibility, as opposed to optical transitions which are in the hundreds of THz and impractical to simulate without rotating wave approximations and the assumption of monochromatic waves as treated in the previous subsection.

### 2.3.7 Summary

We are now finally at the end of our assembly of the Hamiltonian for the  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  D line in the presence of magnetic fields and monochromatic plane waves. Armed with this Hamiltonian and the ability to compute its coupling terms for various lasers, the atomic physicist can predict and simulate much of what is needed for the basics of laser cooling, trapping, and coherent control.

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

# CHAPTER

# 3

## Quantum mechanics on a computer

This chapter comprises a summary of some of the methods used by cold atom physicists to compute numerical results pertaining to cold atom systems. Many a problem in quantum mechanics is not analytically solvable, especially when the real world of experimental physics rears its ugly head, violating theorists' assumptions of simplicity left and right. In particular, atomic physics experiments are time-dependent, with each run of an experiment generally proceeding in stages. Lasers may turn on and off, magnetic fields may vary in magnitude and direction, RF pulses may be chirped to reliably induce particular transitions [42]. Much of the numerical computation performed by researchers in cold atom physics groups such as ours are accordingly of the time-dependent variety, and are fairly literal simulations of specific experiments that may be carried out in the lab.

Here I explain some fundamentals of representing quantum mechanical problems on a computer and then present my favourite algorithms for propagating state vectors and wavefunctions in time. To spoil the surprise: my favourite timestepping algorithms are the 4th-order split-step method and (unoriginally) 4th-order Runge–Kutta, and my favourite method of evaluating spatial derivatives is moderate (6th or so) order finite differences. I think Fourier transforms for spatial derivatives are overrated, and I show that the finite element discrete variable representation (FEDVR) is, despite appearances, actually less computationally efficient than simple finite differences for producing equally accurate solutions to the spatial Schrödinger equation. I also mention some methods of finding groundstates and other stationary states, and in section 3.6 I present a modification to 4th-order Runge–Kutta that enables it to take larger timesteps for certain problems.

### 3.1 From the abstract to the concrete: neglect, discretisation and representation

To numerically simulate a quantum mechanical system, one must evolve a state vector in time according to the Schrödinger equation:

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} |\psi(t)\rangle = \hat{H}(t) |\psi(t)\rangle. \quad (3.1)$$

To do this on a computer, one must first decide which degrees of freedom are to be simulated. We necessarily neglect many degrees of freedom as a matter of course; which ones can be neglected is warranted by the specific situation and we do it so often we barely notice. For example, simulating a single component Bose–Einstein condensate entails neglecting the internal degrees of freedom of the atoms—as well as reducing the atom-light interaction to a simple potential such as an optical dipole trap or magnetic dipole interaction (neglecting the quantum degrees of freedom in the electromagnetic field).

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

We may ignore one or more spatial degrees of freedom as well, say, if we are simulating an experiment in which the condensate is confined to one or two dimensions [43–45] by way of a tight trapping potential in one or more directions. Or, when simulating laser cooling [SEE SECTION ON LASER COOLING SIMS IN ATOMIC PHYSICS CHAPTER], we may care very much about the electronic state of the atom, but treat its motional state classically. In these cases we are essentially imposing the assumption that the system will only occupy one state with respect to those degrees of freedom ignored (the condensate will remain in lowest excitation level in the direction of the tight trap; the atoms will remain in one specific Zeeman sublevel), or we are assuming those degrees of freedom can be treated classically (the electromagnetic field is well described by classical electromagnetism; the atoms' motional state is described well by Newtonian mechanics). Which degrees of freedom can be neglected and which cannot requires knowledge of the situation at hand, often informed by best-practices of the research community in question and ultimately justified by experiment.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>A classic example in the cold atom community of neglected degrees of freedom leading to *disagreement* with experiment is the discovery of polarisation gradient cooling (PGC), the explanation for which requires consideration of Zeeman sublevels of the atoms. The experiment that discovered PGC [46] was designed to measure the effect of Doppler cooling, which does not involve Zeeman sublevels, and it was not until afterwards that theorists determined [25] that transitions between Zeeman sublevels cannot be neglected and indeed are crucial in explaining the lower than predicted temperatures observed.

<sup>2</sup>The D-line of rubidium 87 has an energy gap of 0.6 eV, requiring a temperature of  $\approx 650$  K or higher in order for the Boltzmann factor  $e^{-\frac{\Delta E}{k_B T}}$  describing the thermal occupation of the excited state to exceed  $1 \times 10^{-12}$ .

Once the degrees of freedom are known, one must decide on a basis in which to represent them concretely. The basis often cannot be complete, since for many degrees of freedom this would require an infinite number of basis states—for example the electronic state of an atom contains a countably infinite number of states, and a spatial wavefunction in free space has an uncountable number of states (one for each position in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ ). For the internal state of an atom, therefore, we restrict ourselves to only the states we expect can become non-negligibly occupied, given the initial conditions and transitions involved. For example, at low temperature we can expect atoms to be almost completely in their electronic ground states, since energy gaps between ground and excited states are large compared to the thermal energy scale  $k_B T$ .<sup>2</sup> We need only include the small number of excited states that might become occupied as a result of optical transitions present in the situation being simulated. This can still be a large number of states if one is studying Rydberg atoms [47, 48] or using ultrafast (and therefore broad-band) laser pulses [49–51], but is otherwise fairly small. For example, including both the D<sub>1</sub> and D<sub>2</sub> lines of Rubidium 87, with all hyperfine levels and Zeeman sublevels gives 32 states (see section [LASER COOLING SIMS IN ATOMIC PHYSICS CHAPTER]).

For spatial degrees of freedom, we usually limit ourselves firstly to a finite region of space (we don't expect the Bose–Einstein condensate to have much probability amplitude on the Moon or anywhere else outside the vacuum system), and then we need to discretise the region of space remaining. To do this one can either discretise space on a grid, or use a set of orthogonal basis functions, and sometimes these can be equivalent, as we will soon see.

Once the degrees of freedom and basis vectors have been chosen, the state vector is then represented on a computer as an array of complex numbers, giving the coefficients of each basis vector required to represent a particular state vector. Matrix elements of the Hamiltonian in the same basis must be calculated, and the Schrödinger equation can then be written:

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \langle n|\psi(t)\rangle = \sum_m \langle n|\hat{H}(t)|m\rangle \langle m|\psi(t)\rangle, \quad (3.2)$$

or in standard matrix/vector notation (without Dirac notation):

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \psi_n(t) = \sum_m H_{nm}(t) \psi_m(t) \quad (3.3)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \psi(t) = H(t) \psi(t), \quad (3.4)$$

where  $\psi_n(t) = \langle n|\psi(t)\rangle$ ,  $H_{nm}(t) = \langle n|\hat{H}(t)|m\rangle$  and  $\psi(t)$  and  $H(t)$  are the vector and matrix with components and elements  $\{\psi_n(t)\}$  and  $\{H_{nm}\}$  respectively. This is now

something very concrete that can be typed into a computer. Programming languages generally don't know about Dirac kets and operators, and so everything that is to be computed must be translated into matrices and vectors in specific bases. This may seem so obvious as to not be worth mentioning, but was nonetheless a stumbling block in my own experience of getting to grips with quantum mechanics. Once realising that every operator has a matrix representation in some basis, at least in principle (including differential operators), and that every ket is just a list of vector components in some basis (including ones representing spatial wavefunctions), similarly at least in principle, expressions dense in bras and kets become much more concrete as the reader has a feel for exactly how they would type it into a computer. Without a good feel for the mapping between operator algebra and the actual lists of numbers that these objects imply, doing quantum mechanics on paper can seem like an exercise in abstract mumbo-jumbo.

## 3.2 Solution to the Schrödinger equation by direct exponentiation

As an example of something seemingly abstract being more concrete than first appearances, it is sometimes said that the 'formal' solution to the Schrödinger equation (3.1) is:

$$|\psi(t)\rangle = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t \hat{H}(t') dt'} |\psi(t_0)\rangle. \quad (3.5)$$

Saying that this is the 'formal' solution rather than just 'the solution' is presumably intended to emphasise that the arithmetic operations involved in (3.5) might not make immediate sense for the types of mathematical objects they are operating on, and that we have to be careful in defining the operations such that they produce a result that is not only sensible, but also the solution to the Schrödinger equation. If both  $\hat{H}(t)$  and  $|\psi(t)\rangle$  were single-valued functions of time rather than an operator valued function of time (the values at different times of which don't necessarily commute) and a vector valued function of time, then we would have no problem. However, (3.5) as written with operators and vectors is ambiguous, and we need to elaborate on it in order to ensure it is correct. I will come back to this after considering a simpler case.

If the Hamiltonian is time-independent, then (3.5) reduces to

$$|\psi(t)\rangle = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H} \Delta t} |\psi(t_0)\rangle, \quad (3.6)$$

where  $\Delta t = t - t_0$ . Given the matrix representation  $H$  of  $\hat{H}$  and vector representation  $\psi(t_0)$  of  $|\psi(t_0)\rangle$  in a particular basis, this can now be directly typed into a computer as the matrix multiplication:

$$\psi(t) = U(t, t_0) \psi(t_0), \quad (3.7)$$

where

$$U(t, t_0) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H \Delta t} \quad (3.8)$$

is the (matrix representation of the) unitary evolution operator for time evolution from the initial time  $t_0$  to time  $t$ , and is computed using a matrix exponential of  $-\frac{i}{\hbar} H \Delta t$ . Exponentiation of matrices is defined via the Taylor series of the exponential function:

$$e^A = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{A^n}{n!}, \quad (3.9)$$

which reduces matrix exponentiation to the known operations of matrix multiplication and addition. However, any linear algebra programming library worth the bytes it occupies will have a matrix exponentiation function that should be used instead, as there are

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

other methods of computing matrix exponentials that are more computationally efficient and numerically stable, such as the Padé approximant [52]. It should be noted that there is no known ‘best’ matrix exponential algorithm, all make compromises and perform poorly for certain types of matrices [53].

### 3.2.1 Matrix exponentiation by diagonalisation

Regardless of which method is used, matrix exponentiation is computationally expensive. It can be sped up however if a diagonalisation of  $H$  is known, since if

$$H = QDQ^\dagger, \quad (3.10)$$

<sup>3</sup>Note that the diagonals of  $D$  are the eigenvalues of  $H$ , and the columns of  $Q$  are its eigenvectors.

<sup>4</sup>The reason for this is clear from the Taylor series definition of matrix exponentiation, since matrix multiplication and addition can both be performed elementwise for diagonal matrices.

<sup>5</sup>Such as simulating the internal state of a large number of atoms, or evolving a spinor Bose–Einstein condensate by exponentiating the Zeeman Hamiltonian with a spatially varying magnetic field.

where  $D$  is a diagonal matrix and  $Q$  is a unitary matrix<sup>3</sup>, then

$$e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}H\Delta t} = Q e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}D\Delta t} Q^\dagger. \quad (3.11)$$

This is simple to evaluate because the exponentiation of a diagonal matrix can be performed by exponentiating each diagonal matrix element individually<sup>4</sup>

Even if a diagonalisation of  $H$  is not analytically known, numerically diagonalising  $H$  (using a linear algebra library function or otherwise) can form the basis for writing your own matrix exponentiation function, if needed. I found this necessary for efficiently exponentiating an array of matrices in Python, since the `scipy` and `numpy` scientific and numeric libraries at the present time lack matrix exponentiation functions that can act on arrays of matrices. Writing a `for` loop in an interpreted language such as Python to exponentiate the matrices individually in many cases is unacceptably slow, so for these cases<sup>5</sup> I use a function such as the one below:

---

```

1 import numpy as np
2 from numpy.linalg import eigh
3
4 def expmh(M):
5     """Compute exp(M), where M, shape (... , N, N) is an array of N by N
6     Hermitian matrices, using the diagonalisation method. Made this function
7     because scipy's expm can't take an array of matrices as input, it can only
8     do one at a time."""
9
10    # Diagonalise the matrices:
11    evals, evecs = eigh(M)
12
13    # Now we compute exp(M) = Q exp(D) Q^\dagger where Q is the matrix of
14    # eigenvectors (as columns) and D is the diagonal matrix of eigenvalues:
15
16    Q = evecs
17    Q_dagger = Q.conj().swapaxes(-1, -2) # Only transpose the matrix dimensions
18    exp_D_diags = np.exp(evals)
19
20    # Compute the 3-term matrix product Q*exp_D_diags*Q_dagger using the
21    # einsum function in order to specify which array axes of each array to
22    # sum over:
23    return np.einsum('...ik,...k,...kj->...ij', Q, exp_D_diags, Q_dagger)

```

---

Matrix diagonalisation (using singular value decomposition or QR decomposition) has computational time complexity  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ , where  $n$  is the number of rows/columns in the (square) matrix. Matrix multiplication is (in practice)  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$  and exponentiating a diagonal matrix is only  $\mathcal{O}(n)$ , so matrix exponentiation of a Hermitian matrix via numerical diagonalisation has total cost  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ . This compares to the Padé approximant, which is also  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$  [53]. So the numerical diagonalisation method is not any worse in terms of computational resources required.

On the other hand, if an analytic diagonalisation is already known, it would seem that exponentiation is just as slow, since the computational cost of matrix multiplication

```

rev:      117 (94dec1aa1706)
author:   chrisjbillington
date:    Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```

alone is the same order in  $n$  as that of numerical diagonalisation. This is true—so there are only constant factors to be saved in computer time by using an analytic diagonalisation in order to exponentiate a matrix using (3.11). However if one's aim—as is often the case—is to ultimately compute

$$\psi(t) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H \Delta t} \psi(t_0), \quad (3.12)$$

for a specific  $\psi(t_0)$ , then one needs only matrix-vector multiplications and not matrix-matrix multiplications in order to evaluate

$$\psi(t) = U e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} D \Delta t} U^\dagger \psi(t_0), \quad (3.13)$$

from right-to-left, reducing the computational cost to  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$  compared to evaluating it left-to-right.

Whilst matrix exponentiation is a way to efficiently evolve systems with time-independent Hamiltonians, if you only exponentiate a matrix once, you don't much care about the time complexity of doing so. It is mostly of interest because the real power of these exponentiation methods is as a building block for methods of approximate solutions to the Schrödinger equation in the case of time *dependent* Hamiltonians, as we will see in Section 3.2.3.

### 3.2.2 The interaction picture

Although time-dependent Hamiltonians are much harder to deal with than time-independent ones, often a Hamiltonian can be decomposed into the sum a time-independent and a time-dependent part:

$$\hat{H}(t) = \hat{H}_0 + \hat{H}_1(t), \quad (3.14)$$

in this case, the Schrödinger equation can be transformed into a form that is often more computationally tractable and analytically useful, by treating part of the evolution due to the time-independent part analytically. This transformation is called an *interaction picture* [54, p. 317], or sometimes, particularly in atomic physics, a *rotating frame*, due to the fact that for a spin- $\frac{1}{2}$  system in a constant magnetic field, time evolution due to  $\hat{H}_0$  entails literal rotation of the spin vector in three dimensional space.

To analytically remove the effect of time evolution due to  $\hat{H}_0$ , we write an ansatz for the state vector  $|\psi(t)\rangle$  as an *interaction picture state vector*  $|\psi_I(t)\rangle$  that has undergone time evolution due to  $\hat{H}_0$  for time  $t$ :

$$|\psi(t)\rangle = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t} |\psi_I(t)\rangle \quad (3.15)$$

Substituting this into the Schrödinger equation yields an equation of motion for the interaction picture state vector  $|\psi_I(t)\rangle$ :

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t} |\psi_I(t)\rangle = [\hat{H}_0 + \hat{H}_1(t)] e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t} |\psi_I(t)\rangle \quad (3.16)$$

$$\Rightarrow i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} |\psi_I(t)\rangle = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t} \hat{H}_1(t) e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t} |\psi_I(t)\rangle \quad (3.17)$$

$$\Rightarrow i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} |\psi_I(t)\rangle = \hat{H}_I(t) |\psi_I(t)\rangle, \quad (3.18)$$

where  $\hat{H}_I(t) = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t} \hat{H}_1(t) e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t}$  is an *interaction picture Hamiltonian*. Thus the interaction picture defines a time-dependent unitary transformation, with the operator for transforming from the Schrödinger to interaction picture being:

$$\hat{U}_I(t) = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0 t}, \quad (3.19)$$

$$(3.20)$$

and state vectors and operators transforming as:

$$|\psi_I(t)\rangle = \hat{U}_I |\psi(t)\rangle \quad (3.21)$$

$$\hat{A}_I(t) = \hat{U}_I \hat{A} \hat{U}_I^\dagger, \quad (3.22)$$

which creates time dependence for operators that did not have time dependence in the Schrödinger picture.

Usually, calculations are performed in a basis in which  $\hat{H}_0$  is diagonal, allowing the unitary transformation to be applied using only scalar exponentials rather than matrix exponentials:

$$\hat{U}(t) = \sum_n e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} E_n t} |n\rangle\langle n| \quad (3.23)$$

$$\Rightarrow \langle n|\psi_I(t)\rangle = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} E_n t} \langle n|\psi(t)\rangle \quad (3.24)$$

where  $\{|n\rangle\}$  and  $\{E_n\}$  are the eigenkets and eigenvalues of  $\hat{H}_0$ .

Use of an interaction picture can remove short timescales from the evolution of a state vector, with the original Schrödinger picture state vectors recoverable via analytic transformations, though this is often not necessary since one often only cares about the magnitude of a component  $\langle n|\psi\rangle$  of  $|\psi\rangle$ —which is preserved by the transformation (3.24)—and not its phase.

In atomic physics calculations an interaction picture can be used to remove the large energy scales (and hence small timescale) separating the three fine structure states of the  $D_2$  line (Section 2.3.1), or it can be used to remove the entire hyperfine interaction Hamiltonian, and even both the hyperfine and Zeeman Hamiltonians (Sections 2.3.2 and 2.3.3) if a time-independent magnetic field is being used. This removes the necessity of small numerical timesteps needed by some numerical methods to resolve very fast phase oscillations due to these time-independent Hamiltonians, as well as aiding human interpretation of the results which would otherwise have more interesting or relevant phase changes drowned out by fast phase oscillations from  $\hat{H}_0$ .

In Section 3.6 I present a method that exploits the use of an *instantaneous* interaction picture, that is, an interaction picture whose time independent Hamiltonian is based on a time *dependent* Hamiltonian evaluated at a specific moment in time. In this way, the use of an interaction picture can be extended to aid calculations for a certain class of time dependent Hamiltonians as well.

### 3.2.3 Time-ordered exponentials and time-ordered products

As hinted to earlier, the solution (3.5) is not the whole picture. It can only be taken at face value if the Hamiltonian at each moment in time commutes with itself at all other times (we will see shortly why this is). If it does—that is, if  $[\hat{H}(t'_1), \hat{H}(t'_2)] = 0$  for all  $t'_1, t'_2 \in [t_0, t]$ , then (3.5) is the solution to the Schrödinger equation, and once represented in a specific basis can be written

$$\psi(t) = U(t, t_0)\psi(t_0), \quad (3.25)$$

with

$$U(t, t_0) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t H(t') dt'}, \quad (3.26)$$

i.e. with an integral in the exponent rather than a simple multiplication by a time interval. Since matrix addition can be performed elementwise, so can the integral in the exponent, yielding a matrix which once exponentiated will give the evolution operator  $U(t, t_0)$  for the solution to the Schrödinger equation. If the Hamiltonian at each moment in time

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

does not commute with itself at all other times, however, then the unitary evolution operator for the solution to the Schrödinger equation is instead given by the following *time-ordered exponential* [55, p. 193]:

$$U(t, t_0) = T \left\{ e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t H(t') dt'} \right\}. \quad (3.27)$$

In this expression,  $T$  denotes the *time-ordering operator*. The time ordering operator reorders terms within products that contain a time parameter (for us, the time parameter is the argument of the matrix-valued function  $H$ ), such that the value of the time parameter is smallest in the rightmost term, largest in the leftmost term, and monotonically increasing right-to-left in between. For example:

$$T\{H(4)H(1)H(2)H(5)H(3)\} = H(5)H(4)H(3)H(2)H(1). \quad (3.28)$$

We see now why the time-ordering can be neglected when  $H(t)$  commutes with itself at all times. When it does, all possible reorderings of a product of copies  $H(t)$  are already equal, and so a time-ordering operator leaves the actual value of the product unchanged.

Despite appearances, this time-ordered exponential is perfectly concretely defined via the definitions of all the operations involved that we have described so far, and can—with some effort—be typed into a computer and evaluated directly. Even though this is not how I have evaluated time-ordered exponentials in my simulations of atomic systems, I'll quickly elaborate on this just to emphasise the concreteness of all these operations.

“What products is  $T$  reordering?” you might ask, as (3.27) doesn't appear to contain any products of  $H(t)$ . On the contrary, it does, since exponentiation is defined by its Taylor series, and so

$$U(t, t_0) = 1 + T \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} \left[ -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t H(t') dt' \right]^n \right\} \quad (3.29)$$

$$= 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} \left( -\frac{i}{\hbar} \right)^n T \left\{ \left[ \int_{t_0}^t H(t') dt' \right]^n \right\}. \quad (3.30)$$

Each term in this series contains the  $n^{\text{th}}$  power (and hence a product) of an integral of  $H(t)$ . The time ordering operator doesn't allow us to evaluate each term by computing the matrix integral once and then raising it to a power—to do so would violate time-ordering since each integral involves evaluating  $H(t)$  at all times. Instead we have to write each product of integrals as the integral of a product:

$$U(t, t_0) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} \left( -\frac{i}{\hbar} \right)^n \int_{t_0}^t dt'_1 \int_{t_0}^{t'_1} dt'_2 \cdots \int_{t_0}^{t'_{n-1}} dt'_n \cdots T \{ H(t'_1) H(t'_2) \cdots H(t'_n) \}, \quad (3.31)$$

from which we can see exactly which product of matrices the time ordering operator is acting on.

Now we are close to seeing one might evaluate  $U(t, t_0)$  numerically by summing each term in the Taylor series up to some order set by the required accuracy. For the  $n^{\text{th}}$  term, one needs to evaluate an  $n$ -dimensional integral over  $n$  time coordinates, with each coordinate having the same limits of integration. This can be computed in the usual way an integral is numerically computed,<sup>6</sup> with the minor change that each time the integrand is evaluated, the terms within it must be re-ordered to respect the required time-ordering. Alternatively, the integration region can be restricted to the region in which the terms

<sup>6</sup>By sampling the integrand on a uniform grid, using a quadrature method, or Monte-Carlo integration [56] which is widely used for high dimensional integrals such as these.

are already time-ordered, and then the total integral inferred by symmetry, which gives:

$$U(t, t_0) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\right)^n \int_{t_0}^t dt'_n \cdots \int_{t_0}^{t'_3} dt'_2 \int_{t_0}^{t'_2} dt'_1 H(t'_n) \cdots H(t'_2)H(t'_1). \quad (3.32)$$

This is now a perfectly concrete expression, with each term comprising an integral over an  $n$ -simplex<sup>7</sup> of a product of  $n$  matrices.

This expression for the unitary evolution operator is called the Dyson series [57]. It is not generally used for time-dependent simulations, though it is the basis for time-dependent perturbation theory, and sees use in high energy physics [57, 58] for computing transition amplitudes between incoming and outgoing waves in scattering problems (in which  $U$  is called the S-matrix). In these problems,  $H$  is an interaction Hamiltonian containing terms for all particle interactions being considered. Accordingly, the integrand for the  $n^{\text{th}}$  term, being a product of  $n$  copies of  $H$  evaluated at different times, contains one term for each possible sequence of particle interactions. The integral itself can be considered a sum of transition amplitudes over all possible times that each interaction could have occurred. Indeed, each term in the Dyson series corresponds to a number of Feynman diagrams with  $n$  nodes [58].

The Dyson series isn't really suited to time-dependent simulations, though perturbation theory is useful for approximate analytics. For one, the series must be truncated at some point, and the result won't be a  $U$  that is actually unitary.<sup>8</sup>. Also, we are typically interested in the intermediate states, not just the final state of a system or an average transition rate, as one might want to compute in a scattering problem.

In any case, usually when solving the Schrödinger equation by exponentiation we use the following, alternate expression for a time-ordered exponential:

$$U(t, t_0) = T \left\{ e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t H(t') dt'} \right\} \quad (3.33)$$

$$= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \prod_{n=N-1}^0 e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H(t_n) \Delta t}, \quad (3.34)$$

where here  $\Delta t = (t - t_0)/N$  and  $t_n = t_0 + n\Delta t$ . Note that the product limits are written in the reverse of the usual order—this is important in order to produce terms with smaller  $n$  on the right and larger  $n$  on the left of the resulting product. You can convince yourself that (3.32) is equivalent to (3.34) this by replacing the integral in the exponent with a sum—as per the Riemann definition of an integral—and expanding the exponential according to its Taylor series. Expanding each exponential in (3.34) as a Taylor Series and collecting terms of equal powers of  $H$  then reveals that the two Taylor series are identical.

In any case, (3.34) paints an intuitive picture of solving the Schrödinger equation: one evolves the initial state vector in time by evolving it according to constant Hamiltonians repeatedly over small time intervals<sup>9</sup>. This has the desirable property that all intermediate state vectors are computed at the intermediate steps, meaning one can study the dynamics of the system and not just obtain the final state. This is of course useful for comparison with experiments, plenty of which involve time-dependent data acquisition and not just post-mortem analysis of some evolution.

Numerically, we can't actually take  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , or equivalently  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ , and so we instead choose a  $\Delta t$  smaller than the timescale of any time-dependence of  $H$ , and step through time using

<sup>7</sup>This is the usual definition of the solution to a differential equation, which is why I prefer to think of the product formula (3.34) as the *definition* of the solution to the Schrödinger equation, and the time-ordered exponential as merely a shorthand notation for it.

$$\psi(t_{n+1}) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}H(t_n)\Delta t} \psi(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2) \quad (3.35)$$

$$\Rightarrow \psi(t) = \left( \prod_{n=N-1}^0 e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}H(t_n)\Delta t} \right) \psi(t_0) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t). \quad (3.36)$$

Thus the case of a time-dependent Hamiltonian reduces to repeated application of the solution (3.7) for a time-independent Hamiltonian, and is (globally) accurate to order  $\Delta t$ . Note that the entire expression can be evaluated right-to-left to propagate the initial state vector in time without explicitly computing the overall unitary, which ensures the computational complexity is  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$  in the size of the system (when the exponentiation is performed via an analytic or pre-computed diagonalisation) rather than  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ .

### 3.2.4 The operator product/split-step method

Here I'll review decompositions similar to (3.35), but which use variable timesteps to achieve an accuracy to higher order in  $\Delta t$ . I'll present them at the same time as addressing another problem, which is that Hamiltonians are often not in a simple enough form to be exponentiated efficiently at all, making (3.35) difficult to evaluate. Often Hamiltonians are a sum of non-commuting operators (such as kinetic and potential terms), with time dependence such that any diagonalisation of the overall Hamiltonian at one point in time will not diagonalise it at another point in time, with the system size large enough for numerical diagonalisation to be prohibitively expensive. In these cases, we can use methods called *split-step* or *operator product* methods, which allow one to approximately exponentiate the entire Hamiltonian based on having exact diagonalisations of its component terms. In the case of time-dependent Hamiltonians, this allows us to avoid rediagonalising at every timestep whenever the time-dependence can be expressed as scalar coefficients multiplying time-independent operators:

$$\hat{H}(t) = \alpha(t)\hat{H}_1 + \beta(t)\hat{H}_2 + \dots, \quad (3.37)$$

since multiplication of a matrix by a scalar merely scales its eigenvalues, leaving its eigenbasis unchanged.

There is little downside to having an only approximate exponentiation of the Hamiltonian when the timestepping is already only approximate, so long as we ensure that neither source of error is much greater than the other. To this end I'll show split-step methods that have (global) error  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t)$ ,  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2)$  and  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$ . In section 3.4, we'll see how this method applies to the case of a spatial wavefunction obeying the Gross–Pitaevskii equation.

#### First order split-step

Say we have (the matrix representation of) a Hamiltonian that is the sum of two non-commuting terms:<sup>10</sup>

$$H(t) = H_1(t) + H_2(t). \quad (3.38)$$

The unitary for the solution to the Schrödinger equation is as before:

$$U(t, t_0) = T \left\{ e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t H(t') dt'} \right\}, \quad (3.39)$$

which, without loss of exactness, we can split into  $N$  equal time intervals of size  $\Delta t$  and write

$$U(t, t_0) = \prod_{n=N-1}^0 U(t_{n+1}, t_n), \quad (3.40)$$

<sup>10</sup>From here on, component terms of the Hamiltonian will be written with general time dependence, even though it is understood that these methods are mostly useful for the case where that time dependence can be written as scalar coefficients multiplying otherwise time-independent matrices.

where again  $t_n = t_0 + n\Delta t$  and  $\Delta t = (t - t_0)/N$ , and where

$$U(t_{n+1}, t_n) = T \left\{ e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} H(t') dt'} \right\}. \quad (3.41)$$

Evaluating the integral using a one-point rectangle rule gives

$$U(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H(t_n) \Delta t + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2)}, \quad (3.42)$$

in which we were able to drop the time ordering operator because  $H(t)$  is only evaluated at a single time. Using the Taylor series definition of the exponential, we can take the error term out of the exponent and write

$$U(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H(t_n) \Delta t} + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2). \quad (3.43)$$

So far all we've done is justify (3.35). Now we'll acknowledge that  $H$  is a sum of two terms and write:

$$U(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} (H_1(t_n) + H_2(t_n)) \Delta t} + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2). \quad (3.44)$$

Using the Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula [55, p. 158], we can expand the exponential as:

$$e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} (H_1(t_n) + H_2(t_n)) \Delta t} = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_1(t_n) \Delta t} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_2(t_n) \Delta t} e^{\frac{1}{2\hbar^2} [H_1(t_n), H_2(t_n)] \Delta t^2 + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^3)} \quad (3.45)$$

$$\Rightarrow U(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_1(t_n) \Delta t} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_2(t_n) \Delta t} + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2). \quad (3.46)$$

So we see that the ‘commutation error’ in (3.46) caused by treating the two terms as if they commute is of the same order in  $\Delta t$  as the ‘integration error’ in (3.43) caused by treating the overall Hamiltonian as time-independent over one timestep, resulting in a method with local error  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2)$  and global error  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t)$ ; the first order split-step method:

$$U(t, t_0) = \prod_{n=N-1}^0 U_1(t_{n+1}, t_n) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t), \quad (3.47)$$

where

$$U_1(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_1(t_n) \Delta t} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_2(t_n) \Delta t}. \quad (3.48)$$

Using the diagonalisation method of matrix exponentiation discussed in section 3.2.1, this unitary  $U_1$  can be used to step a state vector through time with only matrix-vector multiplications and scalar exponentiation, where separate diagonalisations of  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  are either analytically known or pre-computed, even though a diagonalisation of the total Hamiltonian  $H$  may not be feasible.

Crucially, if  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  act on different subspaces of the overall Hilbert space, with respective dimensionalities  $n_1$  and  $n_2$ , that is,  $H_1(t) = \tilde{H}_1(t) \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_2}$  and  $H_2(t) = \mathbb{I}_{n_1} \otimes \tilde{H}_2(t)$ , where  $\mathbb{I}_m$  is the  $m \times m$  identity matrix, then the matrix-vector products involved in applying  $U_1$  to a state vector can be much faster ( $\mathcal{O}(n_1^2 n_2 + n_1 n_2^2)$  rather than  $\mathcal{O}(n_1^2 n_2^2)$ ) than if the Hamiltonian weren't split into two terms, even if an analytic diagonalisation of the total Hamiltonian were available:

$$U_1(t_{n+1}, t_n) = \left( e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \tilde{H}_1(t_n) \Delta t} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_2} \right) \left( \mathbb{I}_{n_1} \otimes e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \tilde{H}_2(t_n) \Delta t} \right). \quad (3.49)$$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

By applying (3.46) recursively for the case where either  $H_1$  or  $H_2$  is itself the sum of two further terms, (3.48) immediately generalises to the case where  $H$  is a sum of an arbitrary number of non-commuting terms:

$$U_1(t_{n+1}, t_n) = \prod_{m=1}^M e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_m(t_n) \Delta t}, \quad (3.50)$$

where  $H(t) = \sum_{m=1}^M H_m(t)$ .

### Second and fourth order split-step

By using a two-point trapezoid rule for the integral in (3.41), evaluating  $H(t)$  at the beginning and end of the timestep, one can instead obtain an integration error of  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^3)$  per step:

$$U(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(H(t_n) + H(t_{n+1})) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^3) \quad (3.51)$$

$$= e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(H_1(t_n) + H_2(t_n) + H_1(t_{n+1}) + H_2(t_{n+1})) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^3). \quad (3.52)$$

Then, applying the Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula once more, and replacing  $H_1(t_{n+1})$  (and similarly for  $H_2(t_{n+1})$ ) wherever it appears in a commutator with the Taylor series  $H_1(t_n) + \dot{H}_1(t_n)\Delta t + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2)$ , one can show that if the individual exponentials are ordered in the following way, then the remaining commutation error is also  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^3)$ :

$$U(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_2(t_{n+1}) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_1(t_{n+1}) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_1(t_n) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_2(t_n) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^3). \quad (3.53)$$

This gives the second order split-step method:

$$U(t, t_0) = \prod_{n=N-1}^0 U_2(t_{n+1}, t_n) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2), \quad (3.54)$$

where

$$U_2(t_{n+1}, t_n) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_2(t_{n+1}) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_1(t_{n+1}) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_1(t_n) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_2(t_n) \frac{\Delta t}{2}}, \quad (3.55)$$

or, for an arbitrary number of terms in the Hamiltonian,

$$U_2(t_{n+1}, t_n) = \left( \prod_{m=M}^1 e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_m(t_{n+1}) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} \right) \left( \prod_{m=1}^M e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} H_m(t_n) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} \right). \quad (3.56)$$

$U_2$  can be concisely written in terms of  $U_1$  as:

$$U_2(t_{n+1}, t_n) = U_1^\dagger(t_n + \frac{\Delta t}{2}, t_{n+1}) U_1(t_n + \frac{\Delta t}{2}, t_n), \quad (3.57)$$

which is to say it is simply two applications of  $U_1$ , each of duration half a total timestep, and with the multiplication order of the exponentials reversed in one compared to the other. Two shortcuts are immediately apparent when computing  $U_2$  or its action on a vector: firstly, if there is a time-independent term in the Hamiltonian, it should be assigned to  $H_1$ , so that the innermost two exponentials in (3.55) can be collapsed into one; secondly the final exponential of each timestep is identical to the first exponential of the next timestep, and so these can also be collapsed together (being split apart only at points in time when one wishes to sample the state vector).

The fourth order split-step method is much more difficult to derive, with a large number of commutators needing to cancel exactly to ensure the local error cancels out up to fourth order in  $\Delta t$ . It can be stated in terms of the second order split-step method as [59, p. 7; 60, 61]:

```
rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

$$U(t, t_0) = \prod_{n=N-1}^0 U_4(t_{n+1}, t_n) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4), \quad (3.58)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} U_4(t_{n+1}, t_n) = & U_2(t_{n+1}, t_{n+1} - p\Delta t) \\ & \times U_2(t_{n+1} - p\Delta t, t_{n+1} - 2p\Delta t) \\ & \times U_2(t_{n+1} - 2p\Delta t, t_n + 2p\Delta t) \\ & \times U_2(t_n + 2p\Delta t, t_n + p\Delta t) \\ & \times U_2(t_n + p\Delta t, t_n), \end{aligned} \quad (3.59)$$

where  $p = 1/(4 - 4^{1/3})$ .  $U_4$  comprises five applications of  $U_2$  with timesteps  $p\Delta t, p\Delta t, (1 - 4p)\Delta t, p\Delta t$ , and  $p\Delta t$  respectively. The innermost timestep is backwards in time, since  $(1 - 4p) < 0$ . But this is no problem, one simply evaluates the expression for  $U_2$  with a negative timestep exactly as written, so long as one reads  $\Delta t$  when written within the above expressions for  $U_1(t_f, t_i)$  and  $U_2(t_f, t_i)$  as referring to  $t_f - t_i$ , i.e. the difference between the two arguments to the expression, not its absolute value, and not to the timestep of the method in which it is embedded.

### Parallelisability and other speedups for banded matrices

Expressions such as (3.55) don't at first glance appear particularly easy to parallelise, that is, to be evaluated in such a way as to leverage the computing power of multiple CPU cores, GPU cores, or multiple computers. A series of Hamiltonian terms must be exponentiated one by one and multiplied together. Whilst each exponential factor could be evaluated independently, and then all of them multiplied together before being applied to a state vector, this explicit construction of  $U$  is very costly compared to merely computing its action on a particular state vector, since the latter allows each term to act only in its specific subspace of the overall Hilbert space, and avoids having to pay the  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$  cost of matrix-matrix multiplication.

When one or more terms in the Hamiltonian has a matrix representation which is banded however, that is, all its entries further than a finite number of elements away from the main diagonal are zero, then those terms may be written as a sum of block diagonal matrices, for example:

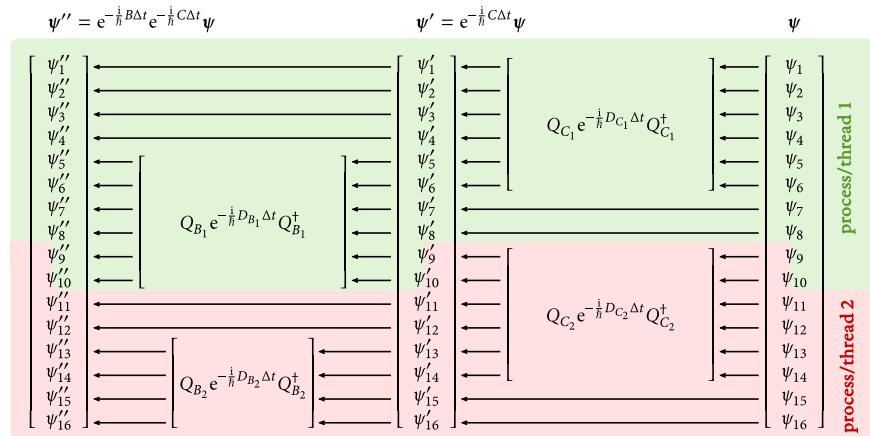
```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

where zero-valued matrix elements outside the band are omitted, and those within the band replaced with dots. In this example, we first take the original  $16 \times 16$  matrix  $A$ , and create four  $4 \times 4$  nonoverlapping submatrices whose diagonals lie along  $A$ 's main diagonal. These submatrices don't quite cover all of  $A$ 's nonzero elements, however, so we expand each submatrix (except the final one) from its bottom-right by two elements, making it a  $6 \times 6$  matrix. The submatrices are no longer non-overlapping, so we take every second one and put it in a matrix  $B$ , every other one and put it in a matrix  $C$  such that  $B$  and  $C$  are both block diagonal, divide the elements they have in common by two so we don't double count them, and then declare that  $A = B + C$ . In the general case, the amount of overlap between the submatrices required to encompass all of  $A$  is equal to the bandwidth  $b$  of  $A$  (in this case  $b = 2$  since  $A$  has two non-main diagonals on each side of its main diagonal).

Having split a term in the Hamiltonian into two terms, we can simply apply the split operator method as normal, with the same order accuracy in  $\Delta t$  as before. But now the matrices that we wish to exponentiate and have act on a vector are *block diagonal*. This means that the exponentiation of each block can be applied (using the diagonalisation method) separately to the vector, independently of each other block. This enables the application of the exponentials to be performed in parallel—each block submatrix modifies different elements of the vector. So one might store different parts of the state vector on different nodes on a cluster computer, and compute  $e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} C \Delta t} \psi$  in parallel. Then some data exchange between nodes would be necessary before applying  $e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} B \Delta t}$  to the result (See Figure 3.1 for a schematic of how this works).

Whilst this specific banded matrix  $A$  is small for the sake of example, in general of course one might have a matrix of any size, allowing for  $B$  and  $C$  to contain more than two submatrices each. The submatrices have a minimum size of twice the bandwidth  $b$  of  $A$ , in order to cover all elements of  $A$  whilst only sharing elements with their nearest neighbour submatrices (any smaller and they would share elements with their next nearest neighbour submatrices as well, complicating things somewhat). But the only maximum is the size of  $A$  itself. So what is the optimal submatrix size? Although the split-step method is still accurate to the same order in  $\Delta t$  no matter how many pieces we split a banded matrix into,

```
rev:      117 (94dec1aa1706)
author:   chrisjbillington
date:    Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

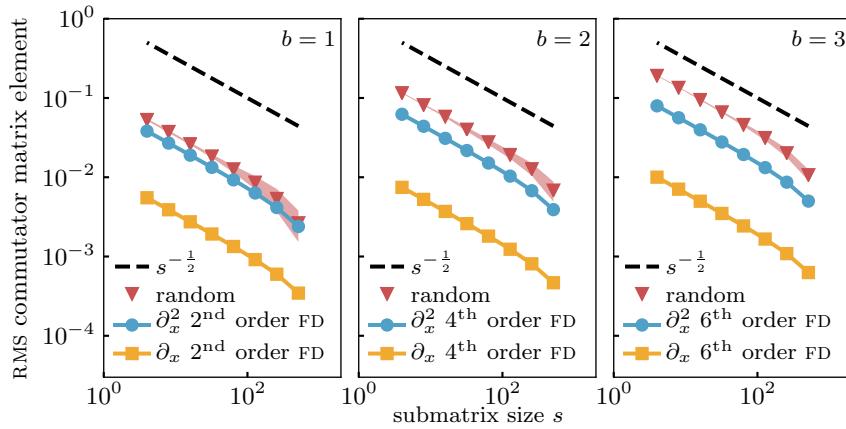


**Figure 3.1:** Schematic of data flow for parallel split-step method. Computation proceeds right to left. To compute the action of  $e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} B \Delta t} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} C \Delta t}$  on a vector  $\psi$ , one can treat the submatrices  $B_1$ ,  $B_2$ ,  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ , of the block-diagonal matrices  $B$  and  $C$  separately. First, the exponentiation of  $C$  can be applied to  $\psi$  by applying the exponentiations of  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  to  $\psi$ . If diagonalisations  $C_1 = Q_{C_1} D_{C_1} Q_{C_1}^\dagger$  and  $C_2 = Q_{C_2} D_{C_2} Q_{C_2}^\dagger$  are known, then the two operations can be applied as a series of matrix-vector multiplications and the exponentiation of diagonal matrices. Because the two submatrices are non-overlapping, they can be applied to the vector completely independently in separate computer processes, CPU or GPU threads, or cluster nodes. The exponentiation of  $B$  can then be applied to the resulting intermediate vector  $\psi'$ , similarly via two independent operations acting on nonoverlapping elements of  $\psi'$ . However, because each submatrix of  $C$  overlaps each submatrix of  $B$  by  $b = 2$  elements on either side ( $b$  being the bandwidth of the original matrix  $A = B + C$ ), threads/processes must share these elements (here the ninth and tenth elements), sending them to each other whenever they have been updated. For simplicity this example has two compute threads and two submatrices in each term  $B$  and  $C$ , but in general there can be any number of either. When a single thread must apply the exponentiation of multiple submatrices to the state vector, it is advantageous for it to first compute the result of any submatrix whose output is required by another thread, then all submatrices that are independent of other threads, and finally any submatrix which requires input from another thread. In this way, data required by other threads can be sent as early as possible, and data needed from other threads called upon as late as possible, minimising the time that threads are waiting for each other whilst there is useful work to be done.

we clearly introduce additional ‘commutation error’ every time we split  $A$  into additional submatrices. So one might think that the number of pieces ought to be minimised, and hence the submatrix size maximised. With regard to this, one might decide to split  $A$  into  $2n_{\text{threads}}$  submatrices (where  $n_{\text{threads}}$  is the number of independent computational threads available), half of which will reside in  $B$  and half in  $C$ . This minimises the extra commutation error subject to the constraint that all threads are put to use—splitting  $A$  into yet smaller pieces within one computational thread will only yield unnecessary additional error.

Is this the best option? No. Despite the extra commutation error, there is additional benefit to splitting  $A$  into more submatrices than required for parallelisation. Let  $s$  be the ‘nominal’ size of each submatrix, that is, the size of the corresponding *non-overlapping* submatrices prior to expanding each one along the diagonal (creating overlap) by a number of elements equal to the bandwidth  $b$ . The computational cost of the matrix-vector multiplications for computing the action of  $e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} B \Delta t} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} C \Delta t}$  on a vector is then  $\mathcal{O}((s+b)^2)$  per submatrix, since  $s+b$  is the size of the submatrices in terms of their nominal size and the bandwidth. The total number of submatrices required to cover  $A$  is  $ns^{-1}$ , where  $n$  is the size of  $A$ , and so the total cost of applying the exponentiations of all submatrices to a

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 3.2:** Numerical experiment to determine how the commutation error scales with the submatrix size when splitting certain banded matrices into the sum of block-diagonal matrices and using a split-operator method to exponentiate the sum. From left to right, matrices with bandwidth  $b = 1$ ,  $b = 1$  and  $b = 2$  are considered. For each bandwidth, the matrices for the finite difference schemes of the order resulting in that bandwidth for first and second derivatives are considered, as well as random matrices of the given bandwidth. The random matrices have real and imaginary parts of each element within the band drawn from standard normal distributions. All matrices are  $1024 \times 1024$ . Calculations with random matrices were performed on 20 independent random matrices, and the mean and standard deviation (shaded) of the results plotted. The error metric is the RMS element of the commutator  $[B, C]$ , where the orginal matrix  $A$  is split into the sum of block-diagonal matrices  $B + C$  using a submatrix size of  $s$  (described in-text). The RMS error in a vector propagated with the split-operator method is proportional this error metric. The result in all cases is that the commutator error, and therefore the error in the split-operator method scales with the submatrix size as  $s^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ .

vector is  $\mathcal{O}(ns^{-1}(s+b)^2)$ . The cost *per unit time* of simulation is then  $\mathcal{O}(n\Delta t^{-1}s^{-1}(s+b)^2)$ . Here we see that splitting into smaller submatrices is desirable from the point of view of speed: because matrix-vector multiplication runs in quadratic time, a larger number of smaller matrices can be multiplied by vectors faster than a smaller number of larger matrices.

But the more submatrices, the more commutation error. Extra error can be made up for by making the timestep smaller, which increases the cost per unit time once more. So is it worth it? The extra commutation error from splitting up  $A$  into more and more pieces in general depends on the form of  $A$ . I performed a small numerical experiment to see how the commutator  $[B, C]$  (which the commutation error is proportional to) scales with  $s$  for random banded matrices, as well as those corresponding to 2nd, 4th and 6th order finite differences for first and second derivatives. The result in all cases was that the commutator scaled as  $s^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  (see Figure 3.2).

Back to our question—does decreasing the timestep size  $\Delta t$  to compensate for the additional commutation error result in more, or less computational cost per unit time than if we hadn't split  $A$  into more pieces than required for parallelisation? Taking into account the nominal submatrix size  $s$  and the method's error in terms of  $\Delta t$ , the total error of integrating using the split-step method (assuming the  $s^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  commutator scaling holds) is  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^a s^{-\frac{1}{2}})$ , where  $a$  is the order in  $\Delta t$  of the accuracy of the specific split-step method used (1, 2, or 4 for those I've discussed). Using these two pieces of information: the total error, and the total cost per unit time; we can now answer the question “What value of  $s$  minimises the computational cost per unit time, assuming constant error?”.

For constant error we set  $\Delta t^a s^{-\frac{1}{2}} \propto 1$  and get that the computational cost per unit

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

time at constant error is  $\mathcal{O}(ns^{-\frac{1}{2a}-1}(s+b)^2)$ . For  $a > \frac{1}{2}$ , this expression has a minimum at  $s = b$ , which is the smallest possible submatrix size in any case. For our example banded matrix  $A$ , decomposition into the smallest possible submatrices looks like this:

So the conclusion is: use the smallest submatrices possible when decomposing a banded matrix into a sum of two block-diagonal matrices. The decrease in computational costs, even when the increased error is compensated for by a smaller timestep, is worth it.

### Limitations and nonlinearity

The split-step method is quite powerful and general. It allows you to approximately decompose the exponentiation of a Hamiltonian into exponentiations of its component terms, in the subspaces that they act on, and avoids exponentiating large banded matrices; saving on computing power immensely compared to exponentiating the full Hamiltonian. It is unitary (when the Hamiltonian is actually Hermitian), and stable—that is, unlike Runge–Kutta methods, the method’s truncation error does not grow without limit as the simulation proceeds but is bounded (disregarding floating point rounding error, which is much smaller than the truncation error of either method) [62]. This is extremely appealing. And, whilst higher order split-step methods quickly become unwieldy [62], fourth order accuracy is quite acceptable for many problems.

Applying all the tricks described in the above sections results in  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t)$ ,  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2)$  and  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$  accurate timestepping methods for solving the Schrödinger equation with total computational cost scaling as  $\mathcal{O}(n \sum_i b_i)$ , where  $n = \prod_i n_i$  (for a product space of subspaces with dimensionalities  $\{n_i\}$ ) is the dimensionality of the total Hilbert space, and  $\{b_i\}$  are the bandwidths of the matrix representations of each term in the Hamiltonian in the chosen basis.<sup>11</sup> Furthermore, the method is efficiently parallelisable, provided the maximum size-to-bandwidth ratio  $\max_i(n_i/b_i)$  of the terms in the Hamiltonian is much larger than the number of parallel computing threads available. Although the constant factors that big-O notation neglects may not be optimal, this scaling would seem to be the best one could hope for—for each of the  $n$  elements in the state vector one must consider the  $\sum_i b_i$  elements (including itself) that the Hamiltonian couples it with, and no more.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>11</sup>Now that we are here, we can finally say something about the best basis for simulating in: to minimise computational costs, the best basis is the one that minimises precisely this sum of bandwidths. The exception to this is when fast Fourier transforms are involved, which I discuss later.

<sup>12</sup> Assuming the banded matrices are otherwise dense within their band—further improvements would be possible if some elements within the band were always zero.

The main downside of this otherwise excellent method of exponentiating Hamiltonians is that the evolution modelled must actually be described by a linear system of equations. One cannot add arbitrary terms and nonlinear operators to the Hamiltonian, as the split-step method requires that one can evaluate each time-dependent term in the Hamiltonian at specific times, including times at which the solution for the state vector is not yet available. This would seem to limit the split-step method strictly to modelling *linear* dynamics, that is, terms in the Hamiltonian must not depend explicitly on the state vector they are operating on. Whilst nature might fundamentally be described by linear dynamics, once approximations of various kinds are made in order to make problems tractable, it's common to end up with a nonlinear pseudopotential or nonlinear effective Hamiltonian. Note that non-*Hermitian*, pseudo-Hamiltonians—leading to non-unitary evolution—are fine. The split-step method has made no assumptions that rules them out, it only assumes the differential equation can be expressed in the form

$$\frac{d}{dt}\psi(t) = \sum_n H_n(t)\psi(t), \quad (3.62)$$

where  $\{H_n\}$  are a set of linear operators, Hermitian or not.

Fortunately, one specific form of nonlinearity that cold atom physicists are particularly interested in—the nonlinear term in the Gross–Pitaevskii equation—can be incorporated without much difficulty. As mentioned, the problem with nonlinearity is that all but the first-order split step methods require you to evaluate terms in the Hamiltonian at some future time at which the state vector is not yet known, that is the algorithm contains steps akin to  $\psi(t_{n+1}) = U(t_{n+1}, t_n; \psi(t_{n+1}))\psi(t_n)$  for some nonlinear unitary matrix  $U(t_{n+1}, t_n; \psi(t_{n+1}))$ — $U$  cannot be explicitly constructed because it both requires and is required by  $\psi(t_{n+1})$ .

For the Gross–Pitaevskii effective Hamiltonian, the second-order split-step method (from which the fourth order method is constructed) for a single step might be naïvely written

$$\psi(t_{n+1}) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}K\frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(g\rho(t_{n+1})+V(t_{n+1}))\frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(g\rho(t_n)+V(t_n))\frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}K\frac{\Delta t}{2}} \psi(t_n), \quad (3.63)$$

where  $\psi(t)$  is the state vector<sup>13</sup> represented in a discrete position basis,  $g$  is the nonlinear interaction constant,  $V(t)$  and  $\rho(t) = \psi(t)\psi^\dagger(t)$  are diagonal matrices for the external potential and the density matrix for  $\psi(t)$  in the same position basis, and  $K$  is a discrete approximation to the kinetic energy operator in the position basis.

As written, this can't be evaluated because  $\psi(t_{n+1})$ —required to evaluate  $\rho(t_{n+1})$ —is not yet known. The order we choose to exponentiate the terms in our Hamiltonian is arbitrary, however (so long as we alternately reverse that order each half-step as required by the second order split-step method), and so swapping the order gives

$$\psi(t_{n+1}) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(g\rho(t_{n+1})+V(t_{n+1}))\frac{\Delta t}{2}} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}K\Delta t} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(g\rho(t_n)+V(t_n))\frac{\Delta t}{2}} \psi(t_n), \quad (3.64)$$

which incidentally has the benefit that since  $K$  is (ordinarily) time independent, the two adjacent exponentials containing it can be combined into one. Now  $\rho(t_{n+1})$  is contained within the leftmost exponential, and so it is the last operator to be applied in the timestep. Note that since  $g\rho(t)$  is real and diagonal in the position basis (as is  $V(t)$ ), this leftmost unitary merely changes the phase of the state vector at each point in space, having no effect on its density. This means that  $\rho(t)$  is, in fact, unaffected by this last unitary evolution operator. Hence,  $\rho(t_{n+1})$  can be computed simply as the density matrix of the intermediate state vector that this unitary was to act on:

$$\rho(t_{n+1}) = \psi(t_{n+1})\psi^\dagger(t_{n+1}) = \tilde{\psi}\tilde{\psi}^\dagger, \quad (3.65)$$

<sup>13</sup>Usually when modelling the GPE the single-particle state vector is normalised to the number of particles, rather than unity, and so strictly speaking it cannot be called a state vector, though it otherwise can be treated as one in most respects.

where

$$\tilde{\psi} = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} K \Delta t} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} (g\rho(t_n) + V(t_n)) \frac{\Delta t}{2}} \psi(t_n). \quad (3.66)$$

The inclusion of  $V(t)$  with  $g\rho(t)$  is optional, and if  $V(t)$  was not real valued, would not be valid (since in that case the density *would* be affected by the evolution induced by  $V(t)$ ). In such a case the Hamiltonian would have to be split into three terms with  $V(t)$  and  $g\rho(t)$  treated separately.

So now we can put some conditions on what types of nonlinear operators can be used within the second-order split step method. The first condition is that at most one nonlinear operator can be included, since it must be placed last in the sandwich of exponentials (otherwise its value at the end of the timestep cannot be inferred immediately prior to acting on the state vector). The second condition is that the nonlinear operator must be invariant with respect to the evolution that it itself induces in the state vector. Here we have an operator that depends only on the state vector's absolute value, but for which the corresponding unitary only evolves the state vector's phase. Another example might be an operator that depends only on the state vector's phase gradients, but evolves the state vector's absolute value, and so forth.

Although I find this argument compelling for second-order split-step, it's less obvious that it should hold for fourth-order split-step as well, which, even though it is based on multiple applications of second-order split-step, involves a substep that is backwards in time. 'Evaluate the nonlinear operator based on the state vector at this specific time' becomes ambiguous when that moment in time is traversed in both directions by two different sub-steps. However, [63] have verified using computer symbolic algebra that indeed, up to even higher order split-step methods, putting the nonlinear density term last in the splitting and always evaluating it using the value of the intermediate state vector immediately prior results in the method having the same order accuracy in  $\Delta t$  as for linear operators only. Given this and my argument above, as well as the reasoning that the second-order split-step method has no way of 'knowing' whether it is acting backward in time or not when embedded in a higher-order split step method, I would expect the same to hold for all nonlinear operators meeting the above two conditions, though I haven't shown this explicitly.

### 3.3 For everything else, there's fourth-order Runge–Kutta

Fourth-order Runge–Kutta (`RK4`) is the enduring workhorse of numerical integration methods. Of the Runge–Kutta methods, it offers a good balance of accuracy and computational cost. When a problem does not have the properties that allow manifestly unitary or error-bounded methods to be used, or when enough computing power can be deployed so as to make these concerns irrelevant, and the programmer's time more important, fourth order Runge–Kutta is a good choice. Its downsides are that it is not manifestly unitary, and its error is not bounded. Nonetheless for many problems this is not a concern in practice.

The advantages of fourth-order Runge–Kutta are compelling: it has global error that is fourth order in the integration timestep, involves four function evaluations per timestep, requires only linear arithmetic operations outside of the function evaluations, and can be applied any problem that can be written in the form

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{x} = f(\mathbf{x}, t), \quad (3.67)$$

for some (possibly nonlinear) function  $f$ , where  $\mathbf{x}$  is a vector of dynamical variables, often in our case the components of a state vector, or for classical dynamics the positions and velocities of an ensemble of particles<sup>14</sup>. Note that this formulation allows for initial

<sup>14</sup>For classical particle dynamics, often lower order symplectic methods such as the leapfrog method [64] can be preferable, but nonetheless it is hard to overstate the usefulness of a general purpose algorithm such as `RK4` that can be deployed as a first attempt, or as a plan B once the assumptions required by another algorithm are violated

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

value problems with coupled ODEs, discretised PDEs, as well as second or higher order differential equations, since an equation of the form

$$\frac{d^2}{dt^2} \mathbf{x} = f(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (3.68)$$

can be rewritten

$$\frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{x}, \dot{\mathbf{x}}) = (\dot{\mathbf{x}}, f(\mathbf{x}, \dot{\mathbf{x}}, t)), \quad (3.69)$$

treating the time derivative of each element of  $\mathbf{x}$  as simply another coupled dynamical variable.

Not unrelated to its ease of implementation, the method itself can be stated concisely. Propagation of the dynamical variables for one timestep from time  $t$  to time  $t + \Delta t$  is computed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{k}_1 &= f(\mathbf{x}(t), t), \\ \mathbf{k}_2 &= f(\mathbf{x}(t) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{k}_1\Delta t, t + \frac{1}{2}\Delta t), \\ \mathbf{k}_3 &= f(\mathbf{x}(t) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{k}_2\Delta t, t + \frac{1}{2}\Delta t), \\ \mathbf{k}_4 &= f(\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{k}_3\Delta t, t + \Delta t), \\ \mathbf{x}(t + \Delta t) &= \mathbf{x}(t) + \frac{\Delta t}{6}(\mathbf{k}_1 + 2\mathbf{k}_2 + 2\mathbf{k}_3 + \mathbf{k}_4). \end{aligned} \quad (3.70)$$

Each step is self-contained, that is, the algorithm does not contain any state from previous steps. This is appealing as it means that  $f$  can change discontinuously between timesteps without giving rise to Runge's phenomenon [65] in the approximate solutions  $\mathbf{x}(t)$ , as can be the case with multistep methods which do retain some dependency on previous steps.  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  can also be modified discontinuously between steps without causing problems, as is required by Monte Carlo wavefunction or quantum jump methods [66,67], or even in the imaginary time evolution method (see section 3.5.1) which may require normalisation of the state vector in between steps. Fourth order Runge–Kutta is therefore quite compatible with stochastic processes and many other models which may not be described by a differential equation alone.

One downside is that the timestep used must be much smaller than the timescale on which  $\mathbf{x}$  changes – even if  $\mathbf{x}$ 's time variation is highly regular. If  $\mathbf{x}$ 's time variation is dominated by the simple accumulation of complex phase at some angular frequency—as is often the case in quantum mechanics—the timesteps used for RK4 must be small enough to resolve these circles about the complex plane. This is in contrast to the exponentiation methods, for which an energy offset (and hence overall change in the angular frequency at which the state vector's elements accumulate phase) is largely irrelevant. Energy offsets or use of an interaction picture can mitigate this problem but requires some foresight, and may not be possible if the required energy offsets change in time or are not known analytically in advance. The method I develop in section 3.6 is a partial remedy for this specific problem, which in my opinion is the biggest weakness of fourth order Runge–Kutta as applied to quantum state evolution, when compared to the unitary methods.

### 3.3.1 Complexity and parallelisability for the Schrödinger equation

Excluding the evaluation of  $f$ , RK4 requires a number of arithmetic operations proportional to the number of elements in  $\mathbf{x}$ , and so contributes time-complexity  $\mathcal{O}(n)$  to the overall calculation, where  $n$  is the number of elements in  $\mathbf{x}$ . Since  $f$  itself usually doesn't run in linear time, the computational time complexity of RK4 is usually therefore that of evaluating  $f$ . Its parallelisability also comes down to that of  $f$ , since equations (3.70)

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

above treat each element of  $\mathbf{x}$  completely independently, with any couplings computed within  $f$ .

For the Schrödinger equation in a concrete basis,  $f$  is

$$f(\psi, t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} H(t)\psi, \quad (3.71)$$

<sup>15</sup>For the Gross–Pitaevskii equation this would be a nonlinear  $H(\psi, t)$ , and everything else in this section still applies.

where  $\psi$  is the state vector in the given basis and  $H(t)$  is the matrix representation of the Hamiltonian in that basis<sup>15</sup>. Fourth order Runge–Kutta is therefore as computationally expensive and parallelisable as computing the matrix–vector product  $H(t)\psi$ . In the worst case this multiplication is  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$  in the size of the Hilbert space and barely parallelisable at all, if  $H$  is dense. But in the common case (as mentioned in section 3.2.4), of  $H$  being a sum of terms which act on different subspaces, i.e.

$$H(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbb{I}_{n_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_{i-1}} \otimes H_i(t) \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_{i+1}} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_N} \quad (3.72)$$

where  $n_i$  is the dimensionality of the subspace acted on by the  $i^{\text{th}}$  term and  $\mathbb{I}_m$  is the  $m \times m$  identity matrix, then things are much better. If each term is dense, then the overall cost of evaluating the product  $H(t)\psi$  is  $\mathcal{O}(n \sum_i n_i)$ , where  $n = \prod_i n_i$  is the dimensionality of the total Hilbert space, which can be considerably less than the  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$  of evaluating the single matrix–vector product for the total Hamiltonian. And if each term is a banded matrix with bandwidth  $b_i$ , then the cost of applying a single term in the Hamiltonian becomes  $\mathcal{O}(nb_i)$  instead of  $\mathcal{O}(mn_i)$ , and so the cost of evaluating  $H(t)\psi$  becomes  $\mathcal{O}(n \sum_i b_i)$ . This is identical to the earlier result for the split-operator method once the trick of splitting up banded matrices into block-diagonal matrices was applied (section 3.2.4), but with much less work (in the sense of programmer effort rather than computational complexity). Representing  $H(t)$  as a sum of terms over different subspaces is no extra work—this is the form we are likely to be writing Hamiltonians in already, and constructing the total  $H(t)$  is often not required if one desires only to propagate a state vector in time.<sup>16</sup> No, we are already applying these operators to different subspaces of the Hilbert space and then summing the results without thinking twice about it, and so the above analysis mostly serves as a reminder that what we are already doing most of the time is in fact very efficient.

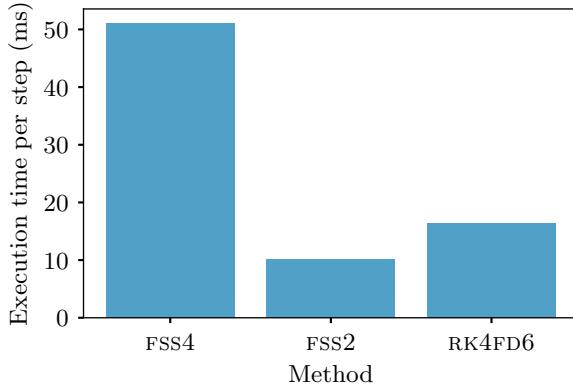
Parallelisation, provided one or more of the matrices are banded, is also straightforward, since if  $A$  is banded with bandwidth  $b$ , then

$$(A\psi)_i = \sum_{j=-b}^b A_{i,i+j}\psi_j, \quad (3.73)$$

that is, calculation of an element of  $A\psi$  requires only the corresponding element of  $\psi$  and its nearest  $b$  neighbours on each side. One can therefore divide up the state vector into contiguous regions (in the subspace in which  $A$  acts), and compute different elements of the product on different compute threads, requiring an exchange of only  $b$  elements at each boundary<sup>17</sup> between neighbouring threads. An example of this is to split two dimensional space into into a number of pieces in each dimension (resulting in a 2D grid) so as to compute the application of (finite difference approximations to) the  $x$  and  $y$  second derivative operators on a state vector in parallel.

An additional benefit of parallelised RK4 when compared to split-operator is that the same amount of data needs to be sent between threads regardless of the number of terms in the Hamiltonian. In split-step methods, each term in the Hamiltonian is exponentiated separately (multiple times for the higher order schemes), requiring an exchange of data each time. The amount of data needing to be exchanged per step therefore scales with the number of terms in the Hamiltonian being parallelised, whereas for RK4 it is constant.

<sup>16</sup>A note about minimising the effect of latency: at the start of an RK4 substep, have each thread send the required elements at the edges of its region in each subspace to its neighbouring threads first. Then compute  $H(t)\psi$  on the interior elements. If each thread has a sufficiently large workload, then by the time this is complete, the data from neighbouring regions will have arrived and threads will not have spent any time waiting for each other.



**Figure 3.3:** The average computation time per step of second and Fourth order Fourier split-step (see Section 3.4.1) and fourth-order Runge–Kutta using sixth order finite differences (see Section 3.4.2) for the simulations detailed in Figure 3.4. It should be noted that the use of finite differences is not significant—as mentioned in Section 3.4.2, it is difficult to observe any difference between the speed of finite differences and Fourier derivatives in practice on present computers. The difference in speed is almost entirely due to the cost of computing exponentials, as can be seen by comparing FSS2 and FSS4, which differ by a factor in five both in speed and in the number of exponentials in their implementations. For fourth order accuracy, RK4 is about three times faster than Fourier split-step.

The constant factors that big-O notation disregards also favour RK4 when compared to split-operator methods. For one, addition and multiplication are much cheaper than exponentiation, meaning that the exponentials in split-operator methods may add considerable computational cost if the Hamiltonian itself is simple. Furthermore, parallelised or not, each term in fourth order split-operator adds 20 matrix-vector products in the space the term acts, whereas RK4 requires only one additional matrix-vector product per term. In practice due to these properties, RK4 runs considerably faster (see Figure 3.3) than split-operator methods, even for simple systems, and the gap widens as complexity increases. This combined with the relatively minor improvement in accuracy or stability (see Figure 3.4) between the methods make RK4 an enduring choice for cold atom problems.

## 3.4 Continuous degrees of freedom

The single-particle, non-relativistic, scalar Schrödinger wave equation, as distinct from the general Schrödinger equation (3.1), is:

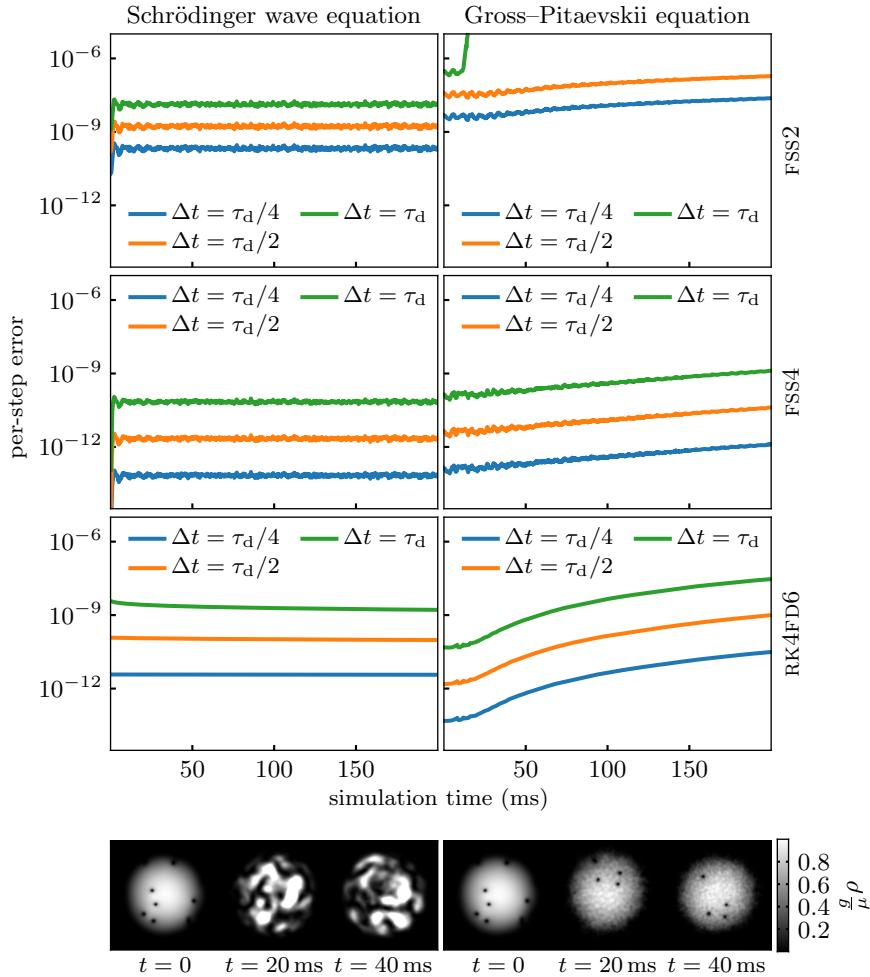
$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V(\mathbf{r}) \right] \psi(\mathbf{r}, t). \quad (3.74)$$

Similarly, as mentioned in Section 2.2, the equation for the single-particle wavefunction of an atom in a single-component Bose–Einstein condensate is the Gross–Pitaevskii equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V(\mathbf{r}) + g|\psi(\mathbf{r}, t)|^2 \right] \psi(\mathbf{r}, t), \quad (3.75)$$

where  $\psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sqrt{N} \langle \mathbf{r} | \psi(t) \rangle$  is the single-particle wavefunction scaled by the square root number of atoms  $N$ .

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

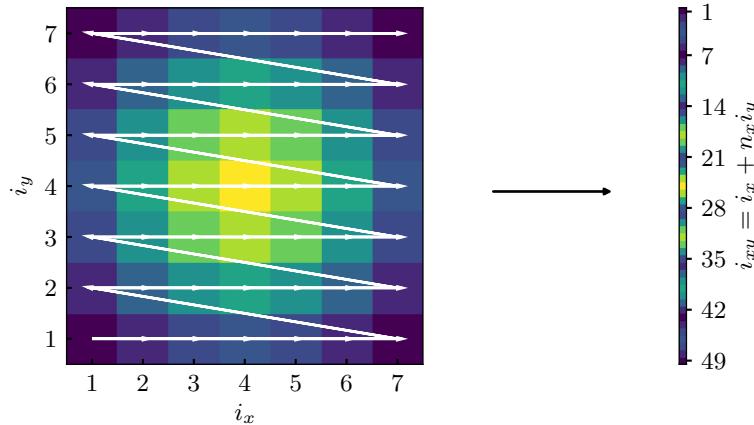


**Figure 3.4:** A comparison of the RMS per-step accuracy of second and Fourth order Fourier split-step (see Section 3.4.1) and fourth-order Runge–Kutta using sixth order finite differences (see Section 3.4.2). In the left column, the linear Schrödinger equation is solved for a 2D wavefunction and on the right the Gross–Pitaevskii equation for a 2D condensate wavefunction, both for the case of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$ . The spatial grid is  $256 \times 256$  and represents a spatial region of  $10 \mu\text{m}$ . The same initial conditions are used for each, produced in the following way: first a Gross–Pitaevskii groundstate (for the sake of comparison, even though this is not a groundstate of the Schrödinger equation) in a harmonic trap chosen to give a Thomas–Fermi radius of  $7.5 \mu\text{m}$  is produced using successive overrelaxation (Section 3.5.2). Vortices are created by multiplying by a spatially varying complex phase factor to produce the appropriate phase winding for a number of randomly chosen vortices, as described in the example in Section 3.6. This is then relaxed using imaginary time evolution (Section 3.5.1) of the Gross–Pitaevskii equation for a duration equal the chemical potential timescale  $\tau_\mu = \frac{2\pi\hbar}{\mu}$  to produce a physically realistic initial condition. This is then evolved in time using the three methods, with three different timesteps, expressed as multiples of the dispersion timescale (described in Section 3.4.4)  $\tau_d = \frac{m\Delta x^2}{\pi\hbar}$  where  $\Delta x$  is the grid spacing. Second order Fourier split-step, although unitary and thus having bounded error, reaches that bound for the smallest timestep. The two fourth order methods have comparable accuracy, with Fourier split step being slightly more accurate and the error in RK4 tending to increase faster with time (for the case of the Gross–Pitaevskii equation). Comparing with Figure 3.3, the difference is even more marginal if we compare by equal computational cost per unit simulation time—which allows RK4 to take timesteps about three times smaller before it consumes the same computational resources as Fourier split step.

```

rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```



**Figure 3.5:** Discretising a function over two dimensional space on a grid yields a list of coefficients, one for each gridpoint. These can be arranged as a column vector, and in this way a two dimensional wavefunction approximated by a finite-dimensional state vector. Computationally we don't normally treat this state vector as a column vector—it is more convenient to leave it as a two-dimensional array. But conceptually it is a single vector living in the product space of the discretised  $x$  and  $y$  spaces.

Both these equations are partial differential equations involving both spatial and temporal derivatives. But in numerical quantum mechanics all state vectors are mapped to column vectors and all operators to matrices. Spatial wavefunctions are no exception to the former and differential operators such as  $\nabla^2$  are no exception to the latter—these objects can be thought of as infinite-dimensional vectors and matrices. So the above two equations are specific instances of the general Schrödinger equation (3.1), given specific Hamiltonians, and represented in a concrete—albeit infinite-dimensional—basis. But we can only perform a finite number of computations, so what do these vectors and operators look like once we reduce them to something finite? That depends on whether we choose to discretise space on a grid, or use a functional basis (and on which functional basis we choose). As we'll see, however, spatial discretisation can be a special case of a functional basis, namely the Fourier basis, plus an additional approximation or two. The resulting matrices are *banded*, justifying the previous two sections' attention to dealing with banded matrices efficiently.

### 3.4.1 Spatial discretisation on a uniform grid: the Fourier basis

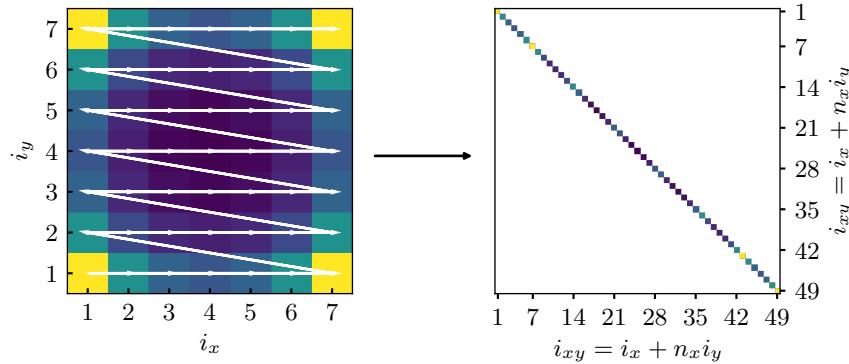
Imagine a two dimensional spatial region within which we are solving the single-component Gross–Pitaevskii equation, evolving an initial condensate wavefunction in time. Having specified which degrees of freedom we want to simulate (two continuous degrees of freedom, one for each spatial dimension), the next step according to the method outlined in section 3.1 is to choose a basis in which to represent this state vector.

Let's say we discretise space in an equally-spaced  $n_x \times n_y = 7 \times 7$  rectangular grid,<sup>18</sup> with spacings  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$ , and only represent the wavefunction at those 49 points in space. The state vector can then be represented by a list of 49 complex numbers, each taken to be the wavefunction's value at the spatial position corresponding to one gridpoint. This 49-vector is now a concrete representation of our state vector (Figure 3.5).

<sup>18</sup>For the sake of example—256 × 256 is a more realistic minimum.

We can also evaluate the potential (and nonlinear term in the case of the Gross–Pitaevskii equation) at each gridpoint and declare this a diagonal operator (Figure 3.6). Finally, we could use finite differences to compute the Laplacian - equivalent to replacing

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 3.6:** A discretised potential energy operator can be formed by evaluating the function for the potential at a set of gridpoints. The resulting matrix is diagonal and square with  $n_x \times n_y$  rows and columns. Since multiplying this operator by a state vector entails multiplying each element of the state vector by one diagonal element of the potential operator, both the state vector and the diagonals of the potential operator can be stored in simulation code as 2D arrays and multiplied elementwise, hiding somewhat the fact that the operation is still a matrix-vector product. This way of discretising a potential operator is called the pseudospectral approximation, and is described later in this section

the Laplacian with a matrix

$$L = L_x \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_y} + \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \otimes L_y \quad (3.76)$$

where  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  are (banded) matrices for finite-difference approximations to second derivatives in each direction. We might also use discrete Fourier transforms to evaluate the Laplacian, since

$$\nabla^2 \psi(\mathbf{r}) = \mathcal{F}^{-1} \left\{ -k^2 \mathcal{F}\{\psi(\mathbf{r})\}(\mathbf{k}) \right\}, \quad (3.77)$$

where  $k = |\mathbf{k}|$ .

This is all well and good, and it works. But at what point did we choose a basis just now—what are the basis vectors? This just looks like discretising space at a certain resolution, rather than the formal process of choosing a basis and projecting the state vector and operators onto each basis vector, as outlined in section 3.1. Assuming what we've done is equivalent to choosing a basis, that basis has a finite number (49) of basis vectors, which means it cannot be complete, since state vectors we're approximately representing with it require an infinite number of complex numbers to be described exactly.<sup>19</sup> So what do the basis functions look like, and what state vectors have we implicitly excluded from simulation by choosing a basis that is incomplete?

Prior to discretisation, the spatial wavefunction  $\psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \langle \mathbf{r} | \psi(t) \rangle$  was already the representation of the abstract state vector  $|\psi\rangle$  in the “spatial basis”—a basis in which the basis vectors  $\{|\mathbf{r}\rangle\}$  are Dirac deltas positioned at each point in space. The value of the wavefunction  $\psi(\mathbf{r})$  for a specific  $\mathbf{r}$  is then simply a coefficient saying how much of the basis vector  $|\mathbf{r}\rangle$  to include in the overall state vector. What we have *not* done is chosen a subset of these Dirac delta basis functions as our basis. This would be very strange—our representation of the wavefunction would allow it to be nonzero at the gridpoints, but not in between, like a comb. Spatially separated Dirac deltas do not spatially overlap at all; the matrix elements of the kinetic energy operator:

$$\langle \mathbf{r}_i | \hat{K} | \mathbf{r}_j \rangle = \int \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i) \left( -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 \right) \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_j) d\mathbf{r} \quad (3.78)$$

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

<sup>19</sup>One for each position within the two dimensional space we're representing.

would all be zero for  $i \neq j$ , disallowing any flow of amplitude from one point in space to another by virtue of it not being able to pass through the intervening points.

Neither have we implicitly chosen a set of two-dimensional boxcar functions centred on each gridpoint with width  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$  in each direction respectively. These cover all space in between gridpoints, but are not twice differentiable everywhere, and hence the kinetic energy operator's matrix elements cannot be evaluated<sup>20</sup>. No, neither of these bases makes sense. To interpret our spatial grid as a basis, we need a set of functions  $\phi_{ij}(\mathbf{r})$  (where  $i$  and  $j$  are the indices of the gridpoints in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions respectively) that are orthonormal, are nonzero only at one gridpoint and are zero at all others, and are twice differentiable everywhere in our spatial region. Infinite choices are available, differing in which subspace of the original Hilbert space they cover. A sensible heuristic for choosing one is that we want to be able to represent the state vectors whose wavefunctions do not change much between adjacent gridpoints, and we are happy for the necessary incompleteness of our basis to exclude wavefunctions with any sort of structure in between gridpoints.

<sup>20</sup>Delta functions aren't twice differentiable either, so this itself isn't a fatal flaw—but even if one defines the boxcar functions as the limit of twice differentiable functions becoming increasingly square with some parameter, the limit for the kinetic energy matrix elements between adjacent boxcars goes to infinity.

### The discrete Fourier transform to the rescue

It turns out that discretising space in this way can indeed be equivalent to choosing a sensible basis. This is made clearer by first discretising in Fourier space instead, and seeing how this can imply a discretisation in real space.

One possible basis for representing all possible state vectors is the Fourier basis  $\{|\mathbf{k}_{ij}\rangle\}$ . With it, any state vector (whose wavefunction is nonzero only within the 2D region) can be represented as the sum of basis vectors whose wavefunctions are 2D plane waves, also localised to the 2D region:

$$\langle \mathbf{r} | \mathbf{k}_{ij} \rangle = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{A}} e^{i \mathbf{k}_{ij} \cdot \mathbf{r}} & (\mathbf{r} \text{ within 2D region}) \\ 0 & (\mathbf{r} \text{ not within 2D region}), \end{cases} \quad (3.79)$$

where  $A$  is the area of the 2D region and the wavevector of each plane wave is

$$\mathbf{k}_{ij} = \left[ \frac{2\pi i}{L_x}, \frac{2\pi j}{L_y} \right]^T, \quad (3.80)$$

where  $i$  and  $j$  are (possibly negative) integers. Any state vector whose wavefunction is localised to the 2D region can then be written as the infinite sum:

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \langle \mathbf{k}_{ij} | \psi \rangle |\mathbf{k}_{ij}\rangle \quad (3.81)$$

$$\Rightarrow \psi(\mathbf{r}) = \langle \mathbf{r} | \psi \rangle = \begin{cases} \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \langle \mathbf{k}_{ij} | \psi \rangle \frac{1}{\sqrt{A}} e^{i \mathbf{k}_{ij} \cdot \mathbf{r}} & (\mathbf{r} \text{ within 2D region}) \\ 0 & (\mathbf{r} \text{ not within 2D region}). \end{cases} \quad (3.82)$$

So  $\{ \langle \mathbf{k}_{ij} | \psi \rangle \}$  are simply the coefficients of the 2D Fourier series of  $\psi(\mathbf{r})$ .

What does this have to do with our discretised space? These basis functions  $\{ \langle \mathbf{r} | \mathbf{k}_{ij} \rangle \}$  don't have the required properties for a spatial discrete basis. For one, there are an infinite number of them, and we require 49 for our  $7 \times 7$  example. Secondly, all of them are nonzero everywhere within the 2D region, whereas we require each basis function to be nonzero at exactly one of our 49 gridpoints.

We can solve the first problem by truncating the Fourier series. By only including basis vectors  $|\mathbf{k}_{ij}\rangle$  for which:

$$\begin{cases} i \in [-\frac{n_x}{2}, \frac{n_x}{2} - 1] & (n_x \text{ even}) \\ i \in [-\frac{n_x-1}{2}, \frac{n_x-1}{2}] & (n_x \text{ odd}) \end{cases} \quad (3.83)$$

and

$$\begin{cases} j \in [-\frac{n_y}{2}, \frac{n_y}{2} - 1] & (n_y \text{ even}) \\ j \in [-\frac{n_y-1}{2}, \frac{n_y-1}{2}] & (n_y \text{ odd}) \end{cases} \quad (3.84)$$

we include only the  $n_x$  and  $n_y$  longest wavelengths in each respective spatial dimension. This is a sensible truncation with a physically meaningful interpretation. By making it, we are no longer able to represent state vectors with short wavelength components. Because the kinetic energy operator, when represented in the Fourier basis, is:

$$\langle \mathbf{k}_{ij} | \hat{K} | \mathbf{k}_{i'j'} \rangle = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \delta_{ii'} \delta_{jj'} \quad (3.85)$$

where  $k = |\mathbf{k}_{ij}|$ , by excluding basis vectors with larger wavevectors, we are excluding state vectors with large kinetic energy. Thus the truncation is a kinetic energy cutoff, and is an accurate approximation whenever a simulation is such that the system is unlikely to obtain kinetic energies above the cutoff.<sup>21</sup> It also matches our earlier intuition that our basis should represent wavefunctions that don't vary much between gridpoints—here we are discarding short wavelengths and hence limiting wavefunctions we can represent to ones that vary slowly in space compared to the cutoff wavelength.

Now we have a set of basis vectors—a discrete Fourier basis—but their spatial wavefunctions still don't have the property of being nonzero only at a single gridpoint each. On the contrary, each plane wave has a constant amplitude everywhere in space. But consider the following superposition of Fourier basis vectors:

$$|\mathbf{r}_{ij}\rangle = \sum_{i'} \sum_{j'} e^{-ik_{i'j'} \cdot \mathbf{r}_{ij}} |\mathbf{k}_{i'j'}\rangle \quad (3.86)$$

with  $\mathbf{r}_{ij} = (i\Delta x, j\Delta y)^T$ . The set of vectors  $\{|\mathbf{r}_{ij}\rangle\}$  are also an orthonormal basis, related to the discrete Fourier basis by a unitary transformation with matrix elements:

$$U_{\text{DFT2}, i'j'ij} = \langle \mathbf{k}_{i'j'} | \mathbf{r}_{ij} \rangle = e^{-ik_{i'j'} \cdot \mathbf{r}_{ij}}. \quad (3.87)$$

This unitary transformation is in fact a two-dimensional discrete Fourier transform (hence the subscript), and the basis vectors  $\{|\mathbf{r}_{ij}\rangle\}$  have spatially localised wavefunctions that are nonzero only at one of the spatial gridpoints. Vectors and matrices can be transformed from their discrete Fourier space representation to their discrete real-space representation and back using the unitary  $U_{\text{DFT2}}$ :

$$\psi_{\text{real}} = U_{\text{DFT2}}^\dagger \psi_{\text{Fourier}} \quad (3.88)$$

$$\psi_{\text{Fourier}} = U_{\text{DFT2}} \psi_{\text{real}} \quad (3.89)$$

$$A_{\text{real}} = U_{\text{DFT2}}^\dagger A_{\text{Fourier}} U_{\text{DFT2}} \quad (3.90)$$

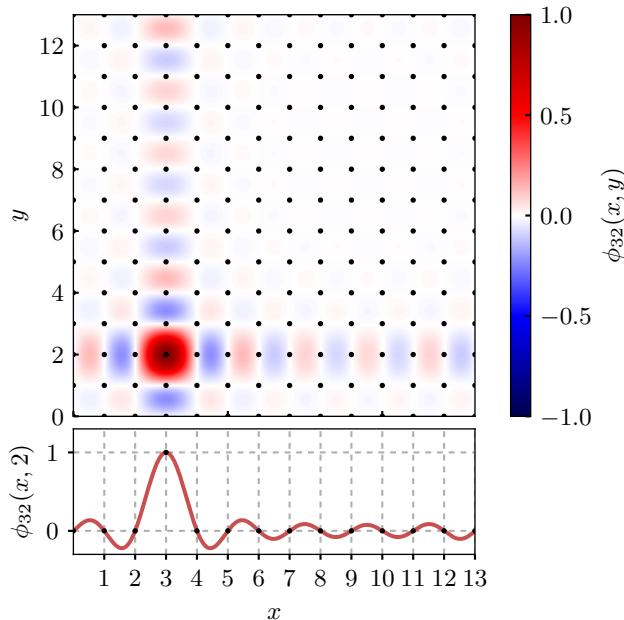
$$A_{\text{Fourier}} = U_{\text{DFT2}} A_{\text{Real}} U_{\text{DFT2}}^\dagger. \quad (3.91)$$

where  $\psi_{\text{real}}$  is the vector of coefficients  $\psi_{\text{real},ij} = \langle \mathbf{r}_{ij} | \psi \rangle$  for representing a state vector in the discrete real space basis,  $\psi_{\text{Fourier}}$  is the vector of coefficients  $\psi_{\text{Fourier},ij} = \langle \mathbf{k}_{ij} | \psi \rangle$  for the state vector in the discrete Fourier basis, and  $A_{\text{real}}$  and  $A_{\text{Fourier}}$  are the representations of some operator  $\hat{A}$  in the discrete real and Fourier bases respectively, with matrix elements  $A_{\text{real},ijij'} = \langle \mathbf{r}_{ij} | \hat{A} | \mathbf{r}_{i'j'} \rangle$  and  $A_{\text{Fourier},ijij'} = \langle \mathbf{k}_{ij} | \hat{A} | \mathbf{k}_{i'j'} \rangle$ .

The spatial representation of the basis vectors  $\{|\mathbf{r}_{ij}\rangle\}$  can be computed using (3.79) as:

$$\phi_{ij}(\mathbf{r}) = \langle \mathbf{r} | \mathbf{r}_{ij} \rangle = \sum_{i'j'} e^{-ik_{i'j'} \cdot \mathbf{r}_{ij}} \langle \mathbf{r} | \mathbf{k}_{i'j'} \rangle \quad (3.92)$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi_{ij}(\mathbf{r}) = \begin{cases} \sum_{i'j'} \frac{1}{\sqrt{L_x L_y}} e^{ik_{i'j'} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_{ij})} & (\mathbf{r} \text{ within 2D region}) \\ 0 & (\mathbf{r} \text{ not within 2D region}), \end{cases} \quad (3.93)$$



**Figure 3.7:** An example of the spatial representation of one of the basis vectors obtained by transforming the discrete Fourier basis using the discrete Fourier transform. Since the discrete Fourier transform is a unitary transformation, the set of these basis functions forms an equivalent orthonormal basis for representing state vectors and operators.

where  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  are the spatial extents of the  $x$  and  $y$  dimensions. An example of one of these basis vectors in the spatial representation is plotted in Figure 3.7.

These functions are sometimes called *periodic sinc functions*, *band-limited delta functions*, or the *Dirichlet kernel* [68, p. 619; 69]. Each of them is zero at all of the gridpoints except one, and they form an orthonormal basis set. They satisfy all of our requirements to be a basis corresponding to our gridded discretisation of space.

One thing to note is that these functions are periodic. By using the Fourier basis in the way we have to restrict our basis to cover only a finite region of both Fourier space and real space, we have necessarily imposed periodicity on the problem. This periodicity shows itself when we compute matrix elements of operators in this basis - if we compute the kinetic energy operator's matrix elements for example, it will couple basis states across the boundary of the region, resulting in spatial periodicity—a wavepacket moving rightward through the right boundary will emerge moving rightward from the left boundary.

Less obviously, the basis is also periodic in Fourier space, and so a wavepacket moving out of the region of Fourier space simulated will also wrap around to the opposite side of Fourier space. In real space, this may appear as a wavepacket undergoing acceleration only to suddenly reverse its velocity as if reflected off a barrier. This effect is unphysical<sup>22</sup> and should be taken as a sign that the spatial grid is not fine enough for the dynamics being simulated.

The discrete Fourier basis we've described is one example of a *spectral basis*, and a numerical method which represented the state vector solely in this basis would be called a *spectral method*. Other choices of basis functions, such as polynomials (see section 3.4.3) or spherical harmonics lead to other spectral methods.<sup>23</sup> The discrete spatial basis discussed above, despite being related to the Fourier basis by a unitary transformation, is often called a *pseudospectral basis*, however, and a method representing the state vector in this basis a *pseudospectral method*. Although it is “just another basis”, the fact that the basis

<sup>22</sup>With the possible exception of the region of Fourier space being simulated corresponding to the first Brillouin zone of a lattice potential, in which case these velocity reversals would correspond to Bloch oscillations.

<sup>23</sup>The wavefunctions of eigenstates of the 3D harmonic oscillator are products of radial polynomials and spherical harmonics, the combination of which is a good spectral basis for many problems.

functions are zero at all spatial points bar one each leads to the possibility of a further approximation when representing some operators, which makes bases with this property especially useful. I describe this in the following section.

### Vector and matrix elements in the Fourier and pseudospectral bases

We now have a finite basis  $\{|\mathbf{r}_{ij}\rangle\}$  that matches our intuitions somewhat for representing a wavefunction at a set of gridpoints. A state vector can be approximated as a linear sum of these basis vectors, with the coefficient for each one being equal to the projection of state vector's wavefunction onto the basis vector's wavefunction:

$$|\psi\rangle \approx \sum_{ij} \psi_{ij} |\mathbf{r}_{ij}\rangle, \quad (3.94)$$

where

$$\psi_{ij} = \int \phi_{ij}^*(\mathbf{r}) \psi(\mathbf{r}) d\mathbf{r}. \quad (3.95)$$

In practice however this integral is rarely done. Instead,  $\psi_{ij}$  is simply taken to be the value of the exact wavefunction  $\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \langle \mathbf{r} | \psi \rangle$  at the point  $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_{ij}$ :

$$\psi_{ij} \approx \psi(\mathbf{r}_{ij}) \quad (3.96)$$

To see why this is a good approximation, imagine that the approximation (3.94) were exact, that is,  $\psi(\mathbf{r})$  were exactly equal to a linear sum of the functions  $\{\phi_{ij}(\mathbf{r})\}$ . Since all the basis functions are zero at the point  $\mathbf{r}_{ij}$  except for  $\phi_{ij}$ , the value of  $\psi(\mathbf{r}_{ij})$  must come solely from the  $\psi(\mathbf{r})$ 's projection onto the basis function  $\phi_{ij}(\mathbf{r})$ . Since approximating (3.94) underlies the results of any simulation that discretises a state vector in this way, treating it as exact for the initial projection onto the discrete basis is making an assumption no worse than that already being relied upon.

With a basis and initial discrete state vector in hand, we can now proceed to calculate matrix elements of the Hamiltonian, after which we can proceed to solve the differential equation (3.3) to determine how the coefficients  $\{\psi_{ij}\}$  evolve in time.

The specific properties of our Fourier/pseudospectral basis make it quite useful for a range of common Hamiltonians. For example, let's take the single particle Schrödinger Hamiltonian:

$$\hat{H}_{\text{Schrö}} = \frac{\hbar^2 \hat{k}^2}{2m} + V(\hat{\mathbf{r}}), \quad (3.97)$$

where  $\hat{k} = |\hat{\mathbf{k}}|$ .

The two terms, kinetic and potential, are each diagonal in different bases. The kinetic term is diagonal in the Fourier basis:

$$\langle \mathbf{k}' | \frac{\hbar^2 \hat{k}^2}{2m} | \mathbf{k} \rangle = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'), \quad (3.98)$$

where  $k = |\mathbf{k}|$ , and the potential term is diagonal in the spatial basis:

$$\langle \mathbf{r}' | V(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) | \mathbf{r} \rangle = V(\mathbf{r}) \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'). \quad (3.99)$$

The kinetic term is also diagonal our discrete Fourier basis:

$$K_{\text{Fourier}, i'j'ij} = \langle \mathbf{k}_{i'j'} | \frac{\hbar^2 \hat{k}^2}{2m} | \mathbf{k}_{ij} \rangle = \frac{\hbar^2 k_{ij}^2}{2m} \delta_{i'i} \delta_{j'j}, \quad (3.100)$$

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

however—perhaps surprisingly—the potential term is not diagonal in the pseudospectral basis, only approximately so:

$$V_{\text{real},i'j'ij} = \langle \mathbf{r}_{i'j'} | V(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) | \mathbf{r}_{ij} \rangle \approx V(\mathbf{r}_{ij}) \delta_{i'i} \delta_{j'j}. \quad (3.101)$$

Nonetheless, equation (3.101) is in practice treated as exact for the purpose of computing matrix elements in the discrete basis of operators that are diagonal in the full spatial basis. As above with projecting a state vector using simply the values of a wavefunction at the gridpoints (rather than doing integrals), treating this approximation as exact is equivalent to making the assumption that the potential  $V(\mathbf{r})$  is already accurately representable in the discrete basis as a diagonal operator:

$$V(\mathbf{r}) \approx \sum_{ij} V(\mathbf{r}_{ij}) \phi_{ij}^*(\mathbf{r}) \phi_{ij}(\mathbf{r}), \quad (3.102)$$

and so similarly is going to be a good approximation whenever the discrete basis is well able to represent the potential. So long as your discrete basis can accurately represent the state vectors and spatially-diagonal operators you will be using, it makes little difference whether you project those vectors and operators onto the basis using integrals or using simply their values at the gridpoints.

This alternate method of projection has a name, it is called *collocation* [55, p. 227]. Using collocation instead of vector projection amounts to treating our basis vectors as a scheme for interpolating state vectors and operators in between gridpoints, given their values at the points, rather than as basis vectors to project upon. Another way to interpret collocation is to say that we are evaluating the vector projections using integrals after all, however, we're numerically computing those integrals using a quadrature scheme, only evaluating the integrand at the gridpoints and performing a discrete sum [55, p. 283]. Collocation is what puts the *pseudo* in pseudospectral—if we evaluated all these operators using integrals instead, we would be treating the discrete spatial basis exactly the same as any spectral basis.

Compared to a purely spectral method, pseudospectral methods are of comparable accuracy [70]. This makes intuitive sense—discrete sums instead of integrals is how we are going to do all inner products once we are in the discrete basis—so it can't be much worse to use the same method to approximate operators and initial state vectors. The sole downside of pseudospectral methods, according to [70], is that the error can lead to instability in the presence of certain nonlinearities. Specifically, if long wavelength waves interact in a way that would produce wavelengths shorter than two grid spacings (the Nyquist wavelength), pseudospectral methods will produce longer wavelength waves instead, whereas in a purely spectral method the interaction would not occur, being due to couplings to a Fourier mode outside the discrete Fourier basis. This *aliasing* can cause instability, but can be circumvented with smoothing techniques [71]. This is no great downside: if you want to simulate short length scales, you need to choose a grid spacing small enough to represent them, whereas if short wavelengths are produced despite your willingness to ignore them, you must smooth them away before they are aliased into long wavelengths that you do care about.

Finally, armed with a kinetic energy operator in Fourier space and a pseudospectral approximation to the potential operator in real space, we can write all the matrix elements of  $\hat{H}_{\text{Schrö}}$  in a single basis, and thus our discretised, pseudospectral two-dimensional Schrödinger wave equation:

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \psi_{i'j'}(t) = \sum_{ij} H_{i'j',ij}(t) \psi_{ij}(t) \quad (3.103)$$

$$\Rightarrow i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \psi_{i'j'}(t) = \sum_{ij} \left[ U_{\text{DFT2}}^\dagger K_{\text{Fourier}} U_{\text{DFT2}} + V_{\text{real}}(t) \right]_{i'j',ij} \psi_{ij}(t), \quad (3.104)$$

where we have used the discrete Fourier transform to transform the kinetic energy operator into the discrete real space basis, and allowed the potential operator to be possibly time dependent.

The right hand side of this expression can now simply be evaluated, yielding the time derivative of each component  $\psi_{ij}(t)$  of the discrete state vector  $\psi(t)$ :

$$\frac{d}{dt}\psi(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \left[ U_{\text{DFT2}}^\dagger K_{\text{Fourier}} U_{\text{DFT2}} \psi(t) + V_{\text{real}}(t) \psi(t) \right] \quad (3.105)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d}{dt}\psi(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \left[ \text{FFT}_2^{-1} \left\{ \frac{\hbar^2 \tilde{k}^{\odot 2}}{2m} \odot \text{FFT}_2 \{ \psi(t) \} \right\} + V(\tilde{r}, t) \odot \psi(t) \right], \quad (3.106)$$

where  $\text{FFT}_2$  is the two dimensional fast Fourier transform, an efficient implementation of the discrete Fourier transform (taking time  $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$  in the size of each dimension),  $\tilde{r}$  is a vector (of vectors) containing each discrete position vector (such that  $V(\tilde{r}, t)$  is a vector (of scalars) containing the potential evaluated at each discrete position),  $\tilde{k}$  is a vector (of vectors) containing each discrete  $k$ -vector, such that  $\tilde{k}^{\odot 2}$  is a vector (of scalars) containing the squared magnitude of each discrete  $k$ -vector, and  $\odot$  represents elementwise multiplication (or exponentiation) of vectors. Other than  $\psi$ , these vectors are more akin to arrays used in programming languages than to members of a vector space, hence the somewhat clunky notation in (3.106). Comparison with the continuous version of equation (3.106) (i.e. the Schrödinger wave equation (3.74)), since elementwise multiplication of functions is a more common operation in mathematics, might be clarifying:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi(r, t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \left[ \mathcal{T}^{-1} \left\{ \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \mathcal{F} \{ \psi(r, t) \} (\mathbf{k}) \right\} (\mathbf{r}) + V(r, t) \psi(r, t) \right], \quad (3.107)$$

where  $\mathcal{F}$  is the continuous Fourier transform, and  $k$  as always is  $|\mathbf{k}|$ . So we see that the discretised Schrödinger equation for a single particle in a potential really is the same as evaluating the continuous equation at a set of gridpoints, evaluating spatial derivatives in Fourier space, and replacing the continuous Fourier transform with its discrete equivalent.

Here is an example of how one might compute the RHS of (3.106) in Python code:

---

```

1 import numpy as np
2 from numpy.fft import fft2, ifft2, fftfreq
3
4 pi = np.pi
5 u = 1.660539e-27 # unified atomic mass unit
6 m = 86.909180*u # 87Rb atomic mass
7 omega = 15 # Harmonic trap frequency
8 hbar = 1.054571726e-34 # Reduced Planck's constant
9
10 # Space:
11 nx = ny = 256
12 x_max = y_max = 100e-6
13
14 # Arrays of components of position vectors. The reshaping is to ensure that
15 # when used in arithmetic with each other, these arrays will be treated as if
16 # they are two dimensional with repeated values along the dimensions of size
17 # 1, up to the size of the other array (this is called broadcasting in numpy).
18 x = np.linspace(-x_max, x_max, nx, endpoint=False).reshape(1, nx)
19 y = np.linspace(-y_max, y_max, ny, endpoint=False).reshape(ny, 1)
20
21 # Grid spacing:
22 dx = x[0, 1] - x[0, 0]
23
24 # Arrays of components of k vectors.
25 kx = 2*pi*fftfreq(nx, d=dx).reshape(1, nx)
26 ky = 2*pi*fftfreq(ny, d=dy).reshape(ny, 1)
27
28 # The kinetic energy operator in Fourier space (shape ny, nx).
29 K_fourier = hbar**2 * (kx**2 + ky**2)/(2*m)

rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```

---

```

30 # The potential operator in real space (shape ny, nx)
31 V_real = 0.5 * m * omega**2 * (x**2 + y**2)
32
33 def dpsi_dt(t, psi):
34     """Return a 2D array for the time derivative of the 2D array psi
35     representing a discretised wavefunction obeying the Schrodinger wave
36     equation"""
37     K_real_psi = ifft2(K_fourier * fft2(psi))
38     return -1j/hbar * (K_real_psi + V_real * psi)

```

---

Where the example is for a time-independent potential. If the potential were time dependent, `V_real` within the function `dpsi_dt(t, psi)` would need to be replaced with a call to a function that returned an array for `V_real` at time `t`.

Starting with some initial discrete wavefunction, this could then be solved with a forward differencing scheme like fourth order Runge–Kutta (section 3.3):

---

```

1 def rk4(t, t_final, dt, psi, dpsi_dt):
2     """Evolve the initial array psi_initial forward in time from time t to
3     t_final according to the differential equation dpsi_dt using fourth order
4     Runge-Kutta with timestep dt"""
5     while t < t_final:
6         k1 = dpsi_dt(t, psi)
7         k2 = dpsi_dt(t + 0.5 * dt, psi + 0.5 * k1 * dt)
8         k3 = dpsi_dt(t + 0.5 * dt, psi + 0.5 * k2 * dt)
9         k4 = dpsi_dt(t + dt, psi + k3 * dt)
10
11     psi[:] += dt/6.0 * (k1 + 2 * k2 + 2 * k3 + k4)
12
13     t += dt
14
15 return psi

```

---

The discretised differential equation (3.105) can also be solved using a split-step method (section 3.2.4), since the Hamiltonian matches the requirements of being written as a sum of terms for which individually an eigenbasis is known (the discrete real space basis for the potential term, and the Fourier basis for the kinetic term). For example, here is how one might implement second or fourth-order split-step (only a single timestep shown):

---

```

1 def split_step2(t, psi, dt):
2     """Evolve psi in time from t to t + dt using a single step of the second
3     order Fourier split-step method with timestep dt"""
4
5     # First evolve using the potential term for half a timestep:
6     psi *= np.exp(-1j/hbar * V_real * 0.5 * dt)
7
8     # Then evolve using the kinetic term for a whole timestep, tranforming to
9     # and from Fourier space where the kinetic term is diagonal:
10    psi = ifft2(np.exp(-1j/hbar * K_fourier * dt) * fft2(psi))
11
12    # Then evolve with the potential term again for half a timestep:
13    psi *= np.exp(-1j/hbar * V_real * 0.5 * dt)
14
15    return psi
16
17 def split_step4(t, psi, dt):
18     """Evolve psi in time from t to t + dt using a single step of the fourth
19     order Fourier split-step method with timestep dt"""
20     p = 1/(4 - 4**2*(1/3.0))
21
22     # Five applications of second-order split-step using timesteps
23     # of size p*dt, p*dt, (1 - 4*p)*dt, p*dt, p*dt
24     for subdt in [p*dt, p*dt, (1 - 4*p)*dt, p*dt, p*dt]:
25         psi = split_step2(t, psi, subdt)
26         t += subdt
27
28 return psi

```

---

```

rev:      117 (94dec1aa1706)
author:   chrisjbillington
date:    Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```

In all the above code examples, a nonlinear term as in the case of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation can be included in the potential simply by adding a term `g * np.abs(psi)**2` to the potential `V_real` wherever it appears. As discussed in section 3.2.4, the nonlinearity poses no problem for the split-step methods so long as the potential term of the Hamiltonian is evaluated as the outermost sandwich of exponentials in the second-order split step method (which comprises the sub-steps of fourth-order split-step).

### 3.4.2 Finite differences

Fourier split-step, or using discrete Fourier transforms to evaluate the spatial derivatives at each gridpoint in order to time-evolve using Runge–Kutta are effective and versatile numerical methods.

The use of discrete Fourier transforms in the previous section can be seen as replacing the Laplacian operator in the Schrödinger wave equation (3.74) with the equivalent operation in Fourier space:

$$\nabla^2 \psi(\tilde{r}) \approx \text{FFT}_2^{-1} \left\{ -\tilde{k}^{\odot 2} \odot \text{FFT}_2 \left\{ \psi(\tilde{r}) \right\} \right\}, \quad (3.108)$$

where as before  $\tilde{r}$  is a vector (of vectors) containing the discrete positions,  $\tilde{k}$  is a vector (of vectors) containing discrete  $k$ -vectors such that  $\tilde{k}^{\odot 2}$  is a vector (of scalars) containing the squared magnitudes of each  $k$ -vector, and  $\odot$  represents elementwise multiplication or exponentiation of vectors. More generally for any derivative,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \psi(\tilde{r}) \approx \text{FFT}_2^{-1} \left\{ i\tilde{k}_x \odot \text{FFT}_2 \left\{ \psi(\tilde{r}) \right\} \right\}, \quad (3.109)$$

where  $\tilde{k}_x$  is a vector (of scalars) containing the discrete angular wavenumbers for the  $x$  spatial dimension.

Equations (3.108) and (3.109) are exact for any wavefunction  $\psi(r)$  which is periodic and band-limited to the discrete Fourier space (and thus exactly representable as a vector  $\psi$  of its values at each gridpoint), which is why the Fourier method of computing derivatives this way is sometimes said to be accurate to “infinite order” [72] in the grid spacings  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$ , in contrast to fixed-order approximations to derivatives which are second, fourth, sixth order etc. In practice the Fourier method for derivatives is often used for wavefunctions which are *not* intended to be periodic (the periodicity imposed by using the method is unphysical), and so for these it has merely very high order accuracy, not actually infinite.

In any case, such high accuracy is not often necessary—if one is using only an  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$  accurate timestepping scheme, then the timestepping may be the limiting factor in overall accuracy and it might be wise to decrease the accuracy of computing spatial derivatives if there is otherwise a benefit to doing so.

To that end, the Fourier method of derivatives may be replaced with *finite differences* instead. Although finite differences are usually derived as approximations to derivatives directly from the definition of the derivative without reference to discrete Fourier transforms, they can be considered fixed-order approximations to the Fourier method [72]. Thus operators whose form in Fourier space corresponds to a derivative of some order can be approximated with finite differences:

$$U_{\text{DFT2}}^\dagger k_x U_{\text{DFT2}} \psi(\tilde{r}) = -i\delta_{\Delta x}^{(n)} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_y} \psi(\tilde{r}) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta x^n) \quad (3.110)$$

where  $k_x$  is the diagonal matrix of the discrete angular wavenumbers for the  $x$  spatial dimension and  $\delta_{\Delta x}^{(n)}$  is the matrix representing  $n^{\text{th}}$  order finite difference approximation to the first derivative using grid spacing  $\Delta x$ . The matrix elements of this and some other central finite differences are shown in Table 3.1.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

	$k = -3$	$k = -2$	$k = -1$	$k = 0$	$k = 1$	$k = 2$	$k = 3$
$\Delta x \left( \delta_{\Delta x}^{(2)} \right)_{i,i+k}$			$-\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$		
$\Delta x \left( \delta_{\Delta x}^{(4)} \right)_{i,i+k}$		$\frac{1}{12}$	$-\frac{2}{3}$	0	$\frac{2}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{12}$	
$\Delta x \left( \delta_{\Delta x}^{(6)} \right)_{i,i+k}$	$-\frac{1}{60}$	$\frac{3}{20}$	$-\frac{3}{4}$	0	$\frac{3}{4}$	$-\frac{3}{20}$	$\frac{1}{60}$
$\Delta x^2 \left( \delta_{\Delta x}^{(2)} \right)_{i,i+k}$			1	-2	1		
$\Delta x^2 \left( \delta_{\Delta x}^{(4)} \right)_{i,i+k}$		$-\frac{1}{12}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	$-\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{12}$	
$\Delta x^2 \left( \delta_{\Delta x}^{(6)} \right)_{i,i+k}$	$\frac{1}{90}$	$-\frac{3}{20}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$-\frac{49}{18}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$-\frac{3}{20}$	$\frac{1}{90}$

**Table 3.1:** Matrix elements [73] for some finite-differencing schemes for first ( $\delta_{\Delta x}^{(n)}$ ) and second ( $\delta_{\Delta x}^{(2n)}$ ) derivatives using central finite differences of various orders  $n$  for uniform grid spacing  $\Delta x$ . All finite difference matrices are banded; each column here shows the matrix elements of  $k^{\text{th}}$  diagonal, which are all identical. Elements outside of each matrix's band are left blank. Each matrix element is shown multiplied by factors of  $\Delta x$  for clarity.

The fact that the finite difference matrices are banded allows them to be computed by applying a “stencil” to a discrete state vector, computing an approximation to some linear sum of derivative operators at each point of discrete space by consideration of only that point and a small number of surrounding point. For example, a  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta x^2)$  approximation (assuming  $\Delta x = \Delta y$ ) to the kinetic energy operator in two dimensions may be evaluated at each point as:

$$K_{\text{real}} \psi(\tilde{r}) = U_{\text{DFT2}}^\dagger \frac{\hbar^2(k_x^2 + k_y^2)}{2m} U_{\text{DFT2}} \psi(\tilde{r}) \quad (3.111)$$

$$= -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \left[ \delta_{\Delta x}^{2(n)} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_y} + \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \otimes \delta_{\Delta y}^{2(n)} \right] \psi(\tilde{r}) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta x^2) \quad (3.112)$$

$$\Rightarrow (K_{\text{real}} \psi(\tilde{r}))_{ij} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \left[ -4\psi(x_i, y_j) + \psi(x_{i-1}, y_j) + \psi(x_{i+1}, y_j) + \psi(x_i, y_{j-1}) + \psi(x_i, y_{j+1}) \right] + \mathcal{O}(\Delta x^2). \quad (3.113)$$

Thus the kinetic energy operator, when approximated using finite differences, is an example of an operator that can be written as a sum of banded operators acting on different subspaces of the total Hilbert space—the identity matrices in (3.112) each leave a part of the Hilbert space untouched. As mentioned in section 3.2.4, this in principle considerably reduces the computational cost of applying the approximate kinetic energy operator to a discretised state vector. Fourier transforms, when computed with the fast Fourier transform algorithm, are already less computationally expensive than a general matrix-vector multiplication, that is, the fast Fourier transform allows one to multiply the matrix  $U_{\text{DFT2}}$  in (3.111) by a vector considerably faster than  $\mathcal{O}(n_x^2 n_y^2)$ , which would be the computational time-complexity for a general  $n_x n_y \times n_x n_y$  matrix. Firstly, a two-dimensional discrete Fourier transform can also be written as the sum of two one-dimensional transformations operating on different subspaces:

$$U_{\text{DFT2}} = U_{\text{DFT},x} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{n_y} + \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \otimes U_{\text{DFT},y}, \quad (3.114)$$

where  $U_{\text{DFT},x}$  and  $U_{\text{DFT},y}$  are the unitaries for one-dimensional discrete Fourier transforms in the  $x$  and  $y$  dimensions respectively. So even if  $U_{\text{DFT},x}$  and  $U_{\text{DFT},y}$  were arbitrary matrices, this already would reduce the cost of multiplying  $U_{\text{DFT2}}$  by a vector to  $\mathcal{O}(n_y n_x^2 + n_x n_y^2)$  But they are not arbitrary matrices—each of these one-dimensional

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

Fourier transforms has computational cost  $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$  using the FFT algorithm [74, p. 600], where  $n$  is the number of points in the relevant dimension, resulting in an overall cost of  $\mathcal{O}(n_y n_x \log n_x + n_x n_y \log n_y)$  for applying the two-dimensional Fourier transform  $U_{\text{DFT}_2}$  to a vector. Finite differences improves on this further. As discussed in section 3.2.4, since our finite-differences approximation to the kinetic energy operator can written as the sum of banded matrices operating on different subspaces, the computational cost of applying it to a vector is  $\mathcal{O}(bn_x n_y)$ , where  $b$  is the bandwidth of the banded matrices, which depends on which order accuracy is used (for example, for second order finite-differences  $b = 1$ ). This is faster than the Fourier method of computing the kinetic energy operator by a factor of  $\mathcal{O}(\log n_x + \log n_y)$ . Whilst this seems considerable, the difference is hard to observe in practice. On ordinary computers the number of points needs to be increased so much in order to measure any difference in speed between the algorithms that the data no longer fits in CPU cache and copying the data to and from main memory becomes the bottleneck. Although copying data from memory is a linear-time process, the coefficient of that linear time is large enough to make the asymptotic speed of finite differences vs. Fourier transforms not relevant for ordinary computers at the present time.

No, the practical advantages of finite differences compared to Fourier transforms do not come down to single-core speed. Rather, they are:

1. Being banded matrices, the finite-difference approximations to the kinetic energy operator can be multiplied by a vector, or exponentiated and applied to a vector, in parallel on a cluster computer or GPU using the techniques discussed in section 3.2.4, whereas the fast Fourier transform is less efficiently parallelisable [75]. The speed of finite differences can have very nice scaling with the number of CPU cores or cluster nodes used, since only  $b$  points need to be exchanged between cores at each step when applying or exponentiating the kinetic energy operator. For large problems, ‘superscaling’ can even be observed, whereby the speedup factor obtained by moving to multiple CPUs or compute nodes on a cluster is larger than the number of CPUs/nodes used. This is counterintuitive, but comes from more effectively using CPU cache—by spreading the data over multiple cores, one minimises the proportion of the state vector that needs to reside in main memory instead of in (much faster) CPU cache at any one time.
2. One can intervene at the boundaries to impose boundary conditions other than periodicity. Strictly speaking, as an approximation to the Fourier method of computing derivatives, the indices for the matrix elements as given in Table 3.1 should be read as wrapping around to the other side of the spatial region whenever they would go out of bounds—that is,  $(\delta_{\Delta x}^{2(n)})_{i,i+k}$  should be read as  $(\delta_{\Delta x}^{2(n)})_{i,(i+k) \bmod n_x}$ . However, as mentioned, periodicity is often an undesired consequence of the Fourier method of derivatives. Alternatively one can simply omit these matrix elements that would couple spatial points across the boundary, which has the result of imposing zero boundary conditions instead of periodic. Judicious deletion of matrix elements at other points in space can also be used to impose zero boundary conditions elsewhere, equivalent to an infinite potential barrier which would otherwise be numerically troublesome if done with the potential energy term of the Hamiltonian. Other interventions in the application of the kinetic energy operator can be used to impose other boundary conditions such as constant-value, constant-gradient, etc., whereas the Fourier method is less flexible in this regard.
3. Finite differences are compatible with non-uniform grids, whereas the Fourier method is limited to uniform grids. Non-uniform grids imply different matrix elements [73] for the finite difference operators, but are otherwise treated exactly

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

the same. This allows more dense placement of gridpoints in regions where wavefunctions may have finer spatial structure, without having to waste computational power on regions of space where the wavefunction is known to have only coarser structure. An example is an electron in a Coulomb potential, an accurate simulation of which would need to capture fine details at small radii but less detail at larger radii. A transformation into spherical coordinates with a non-uniform grid for the radial coordinate could be well treated with finite differences.

4. Finite differences are compatible with the use of split-step methods with some operators that are diagonal in neither Fourier nor real space. For example, the real-space representation of the operator for the  $z$  component of angular momentum is  $L_z = -i\hbar \left( x \frac{\partial}{\partial y} - y \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right)$ . With diagonal matrices  $X$  and  $Y$  being used for the  $\hat{x}$  and  $\hat{y}$  operators in accordance with the pseudospectral method, and finite differences being used to approximate the derivatives, the result is a banded matrix representation of  $L_z$ , compatible with the techniques from section 3.2.4 for reducing the problem to that of many small matrices instead of one large one. There is a little more complexity;  $L_z$  cannot be represented as a sum of operators acting on the  $x$  and  $y$  subspaces separately—instead, each term in  $L_z$  is a *product* of operators that act on different subspaces. Consider the first term of a discretised version of  $L_z$  using fourth-order finite differences. It can be diagonalised in the following way:

$$-i\hbar X \otimes \delta_{\Delta y}^{(4)} = -i\hbar \left( \mathbb{I}_{n_x} X \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \right) \otimes \left( Q_{\delta_y}^\dagger D_{\delta_y} Q_{\delta_y} \right), \quad (3.115)$$

where  $Q_{\delta_y}$  and  $D_{\delta_y}$  are the unitary and diagonal matrices that diagonalise  $\delta_{\Delta y}^{(4)}$  ( $X$  is already diagonal, and so is ‘diagonalised’ by the identity matrix for the  $x$  subspace).  $\mathbb{I}_{n_x}$  and  $X$  act on the  $x$  subspace, whereas  $Q_{\delta_y}$  and  $D_{\delta_y}$  act on the  $y$  subspace, and since matrices operating on different subspaces commute, this can be rearranged to:

$$-i\hbar X \otimes \delta_{\Delta y}^{(4)} = \left( \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \otimes Q_{\delta_y}^\dagger \right) \left( -i\hbar X \otimes D_{\delta_y} \right) \left( \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \otimes Q_{\delta_y} \right), \quad (3.116)$$

yielding a diagonalisation of the original matrix that can be used to apply an exponentiation of the original matrix to a vector with matrix-vector multiplications only in the  $x$  any  $y$  subspaces and not the total Hilbert space. Here, the matrix-vector multiplication in the  $x$  subspace is the identity, but more generally the above idea can be used to exponentiate any operator that can be written as the product of operators that act on different subspaces:

$$e^{A \otimes B} = \left( Q_A^\dagger \otimes Q_B^\dagger \right) e^{(D_A \otimes D_B)} \left( Q_A \otimes Q_B \right). \quad (3.117)$$

Since  $X$  is already diagonal,  $\delta_{\Delta y}^{(4)}$  can be written as the sum of two block-diagonal matrices as described in section 3.2.4, allowing (3.116) to be evaluated as the sum of two terms  $-i\hbar X \otimes \delta_{\Delta y}^{(4)} = -i\hbar(X \otimes \delta_{\text{even}} + X \otimes \delta_{\text{odd}})$ , one for each of the block-diagonal matrices  $\delta_{\text{even}}$  and  $\delta_{\text{odd}}$ . The diagonalisation of each term then has matrix-vector products taking place in a space of the size of each block, that is, in the expression

$$-i\hbar X \otimes \delta_{\text{even}} = \left( \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \otimes Q_{\text{even}}^\dagger \right) \left( -i\hbar X \otimes D_{\text{even}} \right) \left( \mathbb{I}_{n_x} \otimes Q_{\text{even}} \right), \quad (3.118)$$

the unitary  $Q_{\text{even}}$  is also block-diagonal. This splitting allows for parallel application of the exponentiation of  $L_z$  to a vector as well as speeding up single-core computation on account of the smaller matrices.

However If a matrix that were not diagonal were present instead of  $X$ , such as another derivative operator, then if we wanted to split *both* matrices each into a sum of two block-diagonal matrices, equation (3.117) would become *four* terms rather than two, and the flow of data for a parallel computation would be somewhat more complicated. For a term in the Hamiltonian that is a product of  $n$  operators acting on different subspaces, the number of terms obtained by splitting them all in this way grows exponentially with  $n$ . But, when all but one operator in the product is diagonal already, as is the case for angular momentum operators, then splitting can be done as normal.

To conclude this section, there are clear advantages to using finite differences as opposed to Fourier transforms when it comes to parallelisability, boundary conditions, and non-uniform grids, but if these are not a concern then both Fourier transforms and finite differences run at approximately equal speeds in practice, meaning one should use whichever is easiest to implement.

Many of these advantages of finite differences over Fourier methods are also enjoyed by the finite element discrete variable representation (**FEDVR**) method, discussed in the next section. Whilst it's also claimed that **FEDVR** has a number of advantages over finite-differences [60, 62], I'll argue that most of the comparisons don't stand up to scrutiny, and that finite differences are often still the right choice for the contexts in which **FEDVR** is argued to be superior.

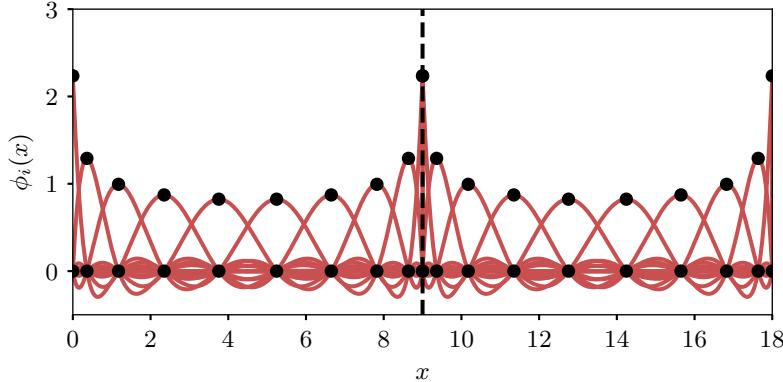
### 3.4.3 Stability and the finite element discrete variable representation

Another method of spatial discretisation is the finite element discrete variable representation (**FEDVR**). As the name suggests, it is a finite element method, using a set of basis functions within each of a number of spatially distributed *elements*, with adjacent elements linked at their boundaries. Here I will not provide a self-contained description of the **FEDVR** method itself, more detail can be found in [55, p. 285] and specifically in the context of Bose–Einstein condensation, [60, 62]. I'll instead introduce the points that are relevant to the conclusion that I drew regarding the method for the purposes of time-evolving wavefunctions, which is that all practicalities considered, it is less useful than simple central finite differences for these problems.

As a finite element method, **FEDVR** divides space into a number of ‘elements’, joined to their neighbouring elements at their edges, within each of which the function being solved for is represented as a linear sum of basis functions. Finite element methods such as this are useful for problems with irregular boundary conditions, or requiring variable grid sizes, as the elements need not have the same size (area/volume, etc.) as each other, and parameters on which the accuracy of the numerical method depends can be varied from element to element, such that precision is high where it is needed and low where it is not. In addition, the basis functions used within the elements can be chosen so that conserved properties of the differential equation are also inherently conserved by the simulation resulting in a *geometric integrator*. The **FEDVR** method though does not make use of this possibility, although it can be used with split-step methods for time propagation, which preserve the wavefunction’s norm.

Within each element in the **FEDVR** method, the wavefunction is represented as a linear sum of a set of polynomial basis functions, specially chosen to have some desirable properties. The polynomials are not orthogonal, but at a set of gridpoints, all but one of them is zero, meaning that as with the Fourier pseudospectral method, they can be used as a pseudospectral basis—computing how much of each polynomial to include in the representation of a wavefunction by using only the wavefunction’s value at the gridpoint at which each polynomial is zero, and computing the matrix elements of operators using

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 3.8:** An example of the normalised, but non-orthogonal basis polynomials used in the finite-element discrete variable representation, shown here for ten-point Gauss–Lobatto quadrature and two elements. Note that each basis polynomial is nonzero at exactly one point and zero at all others, though it can be nonzero in between points. Outside of its element, a given basis function is defined to be zero, except for the so-called “bridge functions”, which are nonzero in two adjacent elements but zero everywhere else, and surprisingly have a discontinuous derivative at the boundary—necessitating some care in evaluating matrix elements of differential operators.

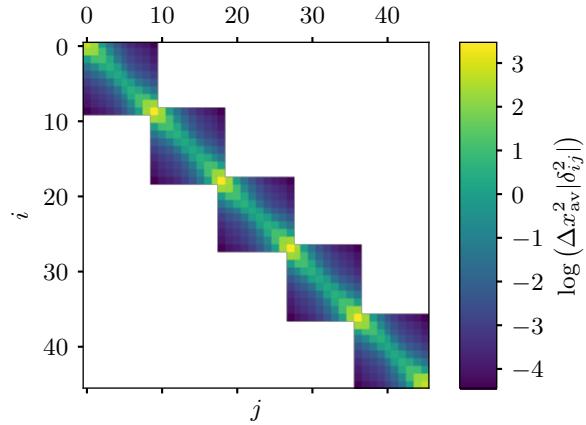
approximate integration based on a discrete sum taking into account only those same gridpoints.

So far (within each element at least) what I have described does not sound too different to the Fourier pseudospectral method. But in the discrete variable representation—which is what the method used within each element of FEDVR is called when used by itself—the gridpoints are not equally spaced. Rather they are more densely packed toward the edges of the element, and least densely packed in the middle of each element. The locations of the gridpoints are chosen according to a *quadrature rule*, which is a method of approximating the definite integral of a function as a weighted sum of the function’s values at a specific set of points. There are many quadrature rules, each with a different set of points and weights, but a common feature to them is that the points are more closely spaced at the edges of the integration region. In the context of the pseudospectral method, the chosen quadrature rule is what we are using when we are evaluating integrals based only on the function’s values at discrete points. For equally spaced points, the weights are all equal, but for unequally spaced points they are not (and vary depending on the quadrature rule in use).

The use of unequally spaced points increases the accuracy of integrals evaluated this way, to the extent that the result will be exact if the integrand is a polynomial of degree less than a given degree that depends on the quadrature scheme. One would think that equally spaced points would produce the most accurate approximate integrals, but this is not true: approximating functions as polynomials equal to the value of the function at a discrete set of points is vulnerable to Runge’s phenomenon—spurious oscillations in the approximation near the edges of the region<sup>24</sup>. The oscillations are minimised, however, if the density of points increases near the edge, specifically if the density of points approaches  $1/\sqrt{1-x^2}$  for the normalised integration region  $x \in [-1, 1]$  as the number of points goes to infinity [76].

By choosing a quadrature scheme with two points located exactly on each edge of the integration regions, such as *Gauss–Lobatto* quadrature [60], the elements of the FEDVR method can be joined together, with adjacent elements sharing these edge points

<sup>24</sup>Note that although finite differences are also based on polynomial interpolation, *central* finite differences are not vulnerable to Runge’s phenomenon because the interpolated polynomials at the ‘edge’ of the region are never used for anything: a different polynomial is used for each point, with each polynomial and its derivatives only ever being evaluated at its central interpolation point.



**Figure 3.9:** The matrix form of the second derivative operator in FEDVR, for five elements each with ten DVR points. The colour scale is logarithmic, showing the log of the absolute values of the matrix elements  $\delta_{ij}^2$  scaled by  $\Delta x_{av}^2$ , where  $\Delta x_{av}$  is the average spacing between the unequally spaced grid points. Zero matrix elements are shown as white. One can see that the second derivative at each grid point is computed using only the points within the same element, except for the points shared by adjacent elements, at which the second derivative depends on points in both adjacent elements.

(see Figure 3.8). This allows one to represent a wavefunction as a list of coefficients for how much of each basis polynomial in each element contributes to it, with the extra condition that some of these coefficients—those corresponding to the edge points—must be equal in order to ensure the wavefunction is continuous across the boundaries between elements.

With some care taken in regard to the points shared between the elements, the FEDVR method provides one with a means of approximating wavefunctions as a finite sum of basis functions, and of approximately calculating the matrix elements of operators in this basis. After that, one can simply apply the operators to the state vectors in order to compute time derivatives, and propagate in time using fourth order Runge–Kutta (section 3.3) or similar, or one can exponentiate the operators, all at once or one at a time, as part of a split-step method (section 3.2.4). The FEDVR method does not require anything in particular about time propagation—like finite differences or the Fourier pseudospectral method, it is only a way of spatially discretising the differential equation you are trying to solve.

Now we arrive at what makes the FEDVR method exciting for those who want to massively parallelise their simulations. When one calculates the matrix representation of, say, a one-dimensional differential operator in the FEDVR basis, one gets matrices that look like Figure 3.9, with an almost-block-diagonal form.

This is because when the state vector is acted upon by some operator, the result for most points in the resulting vector depends only on the points in the input vector *within the same element*. The exceptions are the points shared between elements—for which the value in the output vector depends on the points in the input vector in *both* adjacent elements, which is why the matrix is not perfectly block diagonal.

Why is this exciting? Well, it means that the operator can be written as a sum of two block diagonal matrices, similar to the splitting of finite-difference matrices in section 3.2.4, and in the same way allows the matrix or its exponentiation to be efficiently applied to a state vector in parallel. The difference between this and the case of finite differences is the number of points of overlap between adjacent blocks, which corresponds to the amount of data that must be transferred between parallel threads or cluster nodes at each

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

step during a parallel computation. In finite differences, the number of points that must be exchanged at boundaries in each step or sub-step of whichever time propagation method is used is equal to the bandwidth of the matrix. In **FEDVR**, so long as the boundaries of the regions of space assigned to each thread or cluster node align with boundaries between elements, *only one* point need be exchanged. Increasing the number of points within each element—but reducing the number of elements so as to keep the total number of points constant, decreases the discretisation error of the method, but still, only one point needs to be exchanged at boundaries. This contrasts with finite differences, for which increasing the order of the finite difference scheme increases the matrix bandwidth and hence increases the number points required to be exchanged at the boundaries. So it would seem that **FEDVR** ought to scale much better in parallel implementations, which is a large part of its appeal [60, 62].

However, I've noticed that when using both **FEDVR** and finite differences to simulate Bose–Einstein condensates using the Gross–Pitaevskii equation, smaller timesteps are required when using the **FEDVR** method in otherwise comparable setups. By this I mean that, without damping, there is a timestep size at which the **GPE** simulated using **RK4** (which is a conditionally stable algorithm) is unstable and diverges. Similarly in split-step methods, although the error is bounded, there is a timestep size at which the error rapidly grows to that bound and the wavefunction no longer approximately resembles the true solution. Below this threshold timestep, the error scales as  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$  for **RK4**, and  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$ ,  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2)$ ,  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t)$  for fourth, second, and first order split-step respectively, as expected. But in practice, all these methods are so accurate that one desires to use the largest timestep one can without this blowup (or soft-blowup in the case of the unitary split-step methods) occurring during the time interval one wants to simulate. And my observation was that the threshold timestep is always smaller for **FEDVR** than for finite differences or the Fourier method for determining spatial derivatives, necessitating smaller timesteps for stability or, in the case of the unitary methods, reasonable accuracy.

So why is this? For **RK4**, what is the stability criterion and why might **FEDVR** violate it more easily than finite differences? And how might we understand the sudden decrease in accuracy of the split-step methods at a similar threshold timestep size, despite them being unconditionally stable?

The stability critereon for **RK4** when applied to a linear differential equation of the form:

$$\frac{d\psi}{dt} = A\psi, \quad (3.119)$$

where  $A$  is a matrix with all imaginary eigenvalues (as is the case for Hamiltonian evolution where  $A = -\frac{i}{\hbar}H$ ), is [77]:

$$\Delta t < \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\rho(A)} \quad (3.120)$$

where  $\rho(A)$  is the *spectral radius* of  $A$ , defined as the absolute value of the largest (by absolute value) eigenvalue of  $A$ .

The Gross–Pitaevskii equation is not linear, but we'll put that to the side for the moment—it will be relevant shortly. In the linear case of the Schrödinger wave equation, an upper bound for the spectral radius of  $A$  can be computed from the absolute eigenvalue from the kinetic term, plus the maximum absolute eigenvalue from the potential term. Using the Fourier method to compute spatial derivatives, the largest eigenvalue of the kinetic part of the Hamiltonian is that of the Nyquist mode with  $k_{\text{Nyquist}} = \pi/\Delta x$  for

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

grid spacing  $\Delta x$ , leading to:

$$\rho(A) \leq \left| -\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\hbar^2 k_{\text{Nyquist}}}{2m} \right| + \left| -\frac{i}{\hbar} V(\mathbf{r}) \right|_{\max} \quad (3.121)$$

$$\Rightarrow \Delta t < \frac{2\sqrt{2}\hbar}{\frac{\hbar^2 \pi^2}{2m\Delta x^2} + |V(\mathbf{r})|_{\max}}. \quad (3.122)$$

In the limit of small  $\Delta x$ , the kinetic term dominates and the stability criterion becomes:

$$\Delta t < \frac{4\sqrt{2}m\Delta x^2}{\pi^2\hbar}, \quad (3.123)$$

whereas in the limit of large potential:

$$\Delta t < \frac{2\sqrt{2}\hbar}{|V(\mathbf{r})|_{\max}}. \quad (3.124)$$

These results match our intuition somewhat in terms of dynamical phase evolution—eigenvalues of the Hamiltonian are energies and determine how quickly the elements of the state vector accumulate dynamical phase. For each circle around the complex plane that a dynamical phase of  $2\pi$  entails, we expect to require at least a few timesteps to resolve said circle, and the above shows that ‘a few’ means  $2\sqrt{2}$ . When this dynamical phase evolution is in Fourier space, an accumulated phase of  $2\pi$  will appear in real space as that component having propagated a distance of one wavelength, so the intuition here is that several timepoints are required in the time interval during which the fastest wave (also the Nyquist mode) propagates a distance of one wavelength at its phase velocity.

As a sidenote, if it is known which term of the Hamiltonian dominates the stability criterion, that term can be removed by use of an *interaction picture* (discussed in section 3.6), essentially treating the dynamical phase evolution due to that term analytically. And if the term is not constant, but is *almost* constant, one can still treat *most* of the dynamical phase evolution analytically, transforming the differential equation onto one with much smaller eigenvalues for that term, in both cases allowing one to take potentially much larger timesteps due to the above reasoning. Fourth order Runge–Kutta in the interaction picture (RK4IP) [78] uses an interaction picture to treat the kinetic term of the Schrödinger or Gross–Pitaevskii equation analytically, whereas my ‘fourth order Runge–Kutta in an instantaneous, local interaction picture’ method presented in section 3.6 removes (most of) the potential term. Both methods allow larger timesteps to be taken, but in different circumstances depending on which term is dominating the Hamiltonian.

The problem with FEDVR then, is that it requires smaller timesteps than finite differences because its kinetic energy operator has larger eigenvalues than an equally accurate finite difference method. How much larger?

In order to make a fair comparison, we need to know how many DVR basis functions are required per element in order to compute equally accurate second derivatives as a given finite difference scheme. With  $N$  points per element, FEDVR represents the state vector within each element in a spectral basis of polynomials up to degree  $N - 1$ . Therefore a polynomial of degree  $N - 1$  or less can be represented exactly, any other function is subject to truncation error<sup>25</sup>. If one varies the number of points per element, varying the number of elements in order to keep the total number of points constant, the truncation error in representing an arbitrary function in this basis is therefore  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta x^N)$ , where  $\Delta x$  is either the size of each element, or equivalently the average spacing between grid points (these two differing only by a constant factor if the total number of points is held constant).

In FEDVR the derivative operator, regardless of whether its matrix elements are computed with integrals or the quadrature rule, is exact [60]. The relevant error in a derivative

<sup>25</sup>Note that this truncation error is distinct from that of evaluating *integrals* using the Gauss–Lobatto quadrature rule, which is exact for integrands that are polynomials of degree  $2N - 2$  or less.

of a wavefunction is therefore determined by this truncation error of representing it in the spectral basis in the first place:

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_{\text{approx}}(x_i) &= \psi_{\text{exact}}(x_i) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta x^N) \\ \Rightarrow \psi''_{\text{approx}}(x_i) &= \psi''_{\text{exact}}(x_i) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta x^{N-2}).\end{aligned}\quad (3.125)$$

Central finite difference approximations to second derivatives on the other hand have error  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta x^{N-1})$  where  $N$  is the total number of points used to compute the derivative at each point (for example the three-point central finite difference rule for second derivatives has error  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta x^2)$ , the five-point rule is accurate to  $\mathcal{O}(\Delta x^4)$ , etc). With this knowledge we can translate our question

Which is less computationally intensive to simulate the GPE or Schrödinger wave equation:  $m^{\text{th}}$ -order accurate FEDVR or  $m^{\text{th}}$ -order accurate finite differences?

to

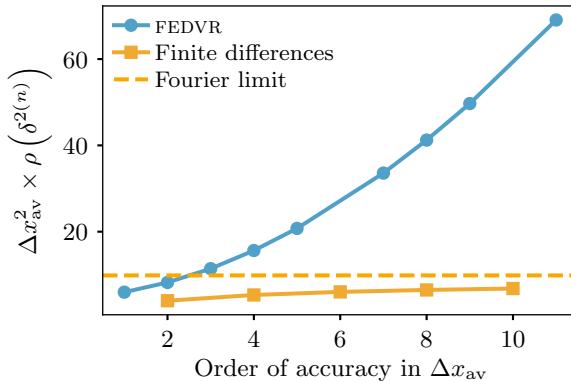
which is less computationally intensive to simulate the GPE or Schrödinger wave equation:  $m + 2$  points-per-element FEDVR or  $m + 1$  point central finite differences?

The argument in favour of FEDVR is that as  $m$  grows, finite differences require an increasing number of points to be exchanged at the boundaries between cluster nodes/threads etc in a parallel implementation, whereas so long as each boundary between spatial regions allocated to different cluster nodes aligns with the boundary between two elements, only one point need be exchanged per timestep in FEDVR, no matter how many points per element there are. Therefore, in the limit of high accuracy, FEDVR wins, it seems.

The problem with this argument is that it compares only the amount of work that needs to be done *per timestep*. But, since the allowed timestep size required for stability (at least for fourth order Runge–Kutta, I'll argue shortly why I think this generalises to other timestepping schemes as well) depends on the spectral radius of the kinetic energy operator, and the kinetic energy operator is not the same as  $m$  grows, more work is needed to show which method is least computationally expensive per unit *simulation time*.

The spectral radius of the kinetic energy operator when approximated using central finite differences does not grow without limit as the number of points used to compute derivatives increases—indeed, its eigenspectrum converges to that of the Fourier method (since the Fourier method can be considered the limit of ‘infinite order’ finite differences [72]), with maximum eigenvalue equal to the kinetic energy of the Nyquist mode. The kinetic energy operator approximated with FEDVR on the other hand does not have a bounded spectral radius as one increases the number of points per element whilst holding the total number of gridpoints constant. Instead its spectral radius increases quadratically with the number of points (equivalently with the order of accuracy of the derivatives), as shown in Figure 3.10.

This result ought to be expected, at least qualitatively. The density of points in FEDVR is higher toward the edges of the elements than in their centres, and if one increases the number of points per element whilst decreasing the number of elements so as to hold the total number of points approximately constant, the smallest spacing between any two adjacent points will be inversely proportional to the number of points per element. We already know that in high order finite differences or the Fourier method, the spectral radius of the kinetic energy operator is simply the kinetic energy of the Nyquist mode, and being the mode described by a wave with half a wavelength spanning one grid spacing, its kinetic energy is proportional to the square of the grid spacing. It is therefore surprising



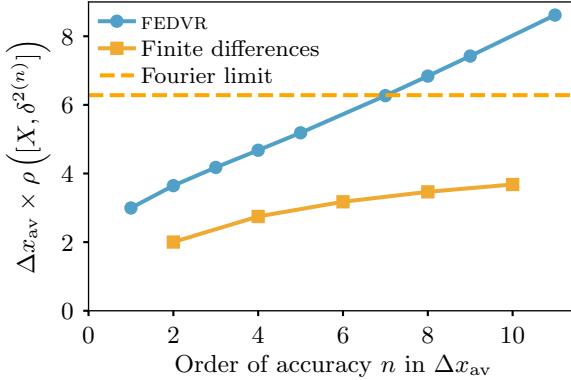
**Figure 3.10:** Scaling of the spectral radius (maximum absolute eigenvalue) of the second derivative operator with respect to the order of accuracy for finite differences and FEDVR. Results were numerically computed by constructing a  $721 \times 721$  matrix (chosen to allow various combinations of number of DVR points per element whilst holding total number of points constant) for each order of accuracy and numerically diagonalising. The spectral radius for FEDVR can be seen to scale quadratically with the order of accuracy, whereas for finite differences the maximum eigenvalue approaches that of the Fourier method.

that in FEDVR when the grid spacing is linearly smaller—albeit locally—that the spectral radius of the kinetic energy operator is quadratically larger. The same result as above could be obtained by asking: “what is the smallest grid spacing, and what is the kinetic energy of the Nyquist mode corresponding to that grid spacing?”, and then declaring the stability criterion to be that one must have at least a few points per period of the frequency corresponding to that energy.

Since the spectral radius of FEDVR operators grows faster with increasing order of accuracy in derivative operators than finite differences, FEDVR requires smaller timesteps for stability when used with RK4. Even at low order accuracy, finite difference operators have smaller spectral radii, and so at all levels of accuracy RK4 is stable with finite differences for larger timesteps than with FEDVR. In the limit of high accuracy then, compared to finite differences FEDVR requires *quadratically* more timesteps to be taken for stability, whereas it requires only *linearly* fewer points to be transferred at the boundaries between threads or cluster nodes per timestep. The larger number of timesteps is therefore the dominant effect, more than cancelling out the benefit of having to transfer fewer points at boundaries per timestep than with finite differences. Indeed, even if transferring data between nodes or threads is the bottleneck of a parallel simulation, *more* points are being transferred all up with FEDVR—they are just spread out over more timesteps.

That’s fourth order Runge–Kutta. What about split-step methods? The split-step methods discussed in section 3.2.4 are unconditionally stable and have bounded error. However, their error can still be large enough to make the results not useful. As shown in (3.46), the leading error term in first-order split-step is  $1/2\hbar^2[V, K]\Delta t^2$  where  $[V, K]$  is the commutator between the (discretised) kinetic and potential energy operators. The leading term of  $V$  is proportional to the discretised  $\hat{x}$  operator  $X$ , and the kinetic energy operator is proportional to an  $n^{\text{th}}$  order accurate discretised second derivative operator  $\delta^{2(n)}$ . Therefore the error per timestep scales with  $[X, \delta^{2(n)}]\Delta t^2$ . Although this expression is not bounded, the error in first-order split-step is nonetheless bounded because this error appears as the argument of a complex exponential. When expanding the complex exponential as its Taylor series, this error term is the leading term, but when it grows it leads merely to a complex exponential with unbounded phase error, not to unbounded

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 3.11:** Scaling with order of accuracy of the spectral radius of the commutator of position and second derivative operators in the pseudospectral finite difference method and FEDVR. The spectral radius of the commutator grows linearly with increasing order of accuracy for FEDVR, whereas it is bounded for finite differences, approaching that of the Fourier method.

absolute error. Nonetheless unbounded phase error still makes the results of a simulation unlikely to be useful.

The largest (by absolute value) eigenvalue of this commutator sets the rate at which erroneous dynamical phase is accumulated by some eigenstate of the commutator. When this phase becomes comparable to  $2\pi$  per timestep, the simulation has clearly lost any semblance of accuracy, despite still being technically “stable”. Therefore as before, the spectral radius of the matrix of this commutator can be used to define a *pseudo*-stability criterion, such that when the spectral radius of  $[V, K]\Delta t^2/2\hbar^2$  becomes comparable to unity, the error will dominate the simulation results. Although the value of the spectral radius will depend on the details of the potential energy operator  $V$  for the particular problem, we can still ask how it scales with increasing order of accuracy of  $K$  given that  $X$  is the leading term of  $V$ . This is done in Figure 3.11, comparing the spectral radius of the commutator when using derivative operators of various orders in both finite differences and FEDVR approximations.

The result is that as with RK4, the pseudo-stability criterion allows at all orders of accuracy for larger timesteps when using finite differences than when using FEDVR, and that the required timestep is bounded from below when increasing the order of accuracy of finite differences, but can become arbitrarily small for increasing accuracy of FEDVR. However the situation is not so dire for FEDVR when used with split-step as it is with RK4 timestepping. Because the error term in split-step is this commutator multiplied by  $\Delta t^2$ , the timestep required for pseudo-stability scales inversely with the *square root* of the spectral radius of the commutator—not with the spectral radius itself as with RK4. Furthermore the spectral radius of the FEDVR commutator increases only *linearly* with increasing order of accuracy, not quadratically as with RK4. Therefore if transferring data between nodes (with time cost proportional to the amount of data transferred) is the bottleneck of one’s simulation, then with increasing accuracy, FEDVR *does* win out. For high enough order of accuracy  $n$ , a factor of  $\sqrt{n}$  more timesteps are needed with FEDVR compared to finite differences, but a factor of  $n$  fewer points are sent per timestep. This results in a factor of  $1/\sqrt{n}$  fewer points being sent per unit simulation time with FEDVR as compared to finite differences. The question of which method is faster then comes down to which is more costly: extra timesteps, or extra data transfer? Using FEDVR will save you a factor of  $\sqrt{n}$  in data transfer at a cost of a factor of  $\sqrt{n}$  in the number of timesteps.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

Given InfiniBand interconnects on cluster computers with tens of gigabits per second of bandwidth, and latency that does not scale with the amount of data, I suspect that a  $\sqrt{n}$  increase in cost of processing within nodes/threads is almost always the larger cost to pay. Therefore I suspect the benefits of FEDVR for parallel simulations of the Schrödinger wave equation or Gross–Pitaevskii equation are limited.

#### 3.4.4 Nonlinearity considerations

The above arguments about stability all disregarded the nonlinearity of the Gross–Pitaevskii equation. Although the stability of a numerical method is very difficult to analyse for nonlinear differential equations, there is a simple argument for heuristically putting an upper bound on the timestep required in order to accurately model the effect of the GPE’s nonlinear term. Essentially, density waves in the condensate propagate not at the phase velocity of the condensate wavefunction, but at its group velocity. The group velocity of the shortest possible wavelength in the system therefore sets an upper bound for the propagation of information due to the nonlinear term. In order to correctly model this term, timesteps must be short enough that one’s numerical method is evaluating the nonlinear term frequently enough that fast moving density waves can’t ‘skip’ gridpoints in between evaluations. If the smallest wavelength is that of the Nyquist mode, or for nonuniform grids the mode whose wavelength is twice the smallest grid spacing, then the maximum group velocity is:

$$v_g(k_{\max}) = \frac{\partial E_K(k_{\max})}{\partial p(k_{\max})} = \frac{\hbar k_{\max}}{m} \frac{\pi \hbar}{m \Delta x_{\min}} \quad (3.127)$$

Asking how long it takes a wave to move a distance of  $\Delta x_{\min}$  at this velocity then results in what I’m calling the *dispersion timescale*:

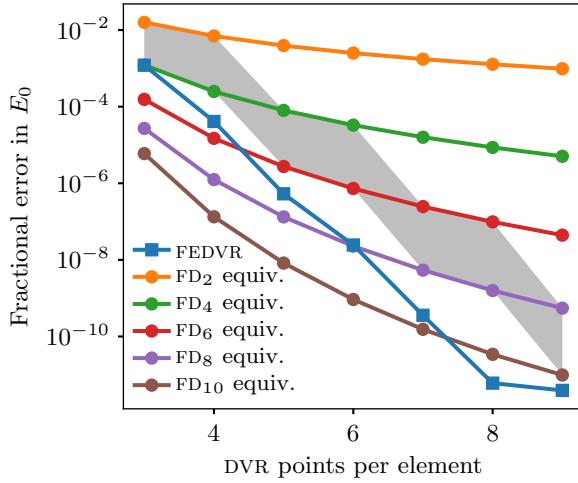
$$\tau_d = \frac{m \Delta x_{\min}^2}{\pi \hbar}. \quad (3.128)$$

The numerical method being used is now fairly irrelevant: one must evaluate the nonlinear term at least as often as every  $\tau_d$  in order to be able to model it accurately, otherwise density waves may move past each other faster than they can be resolved by the timestepping, and their interference patterns will be aliased by the too-slow timestepping, resulting in incorrect nonlinear dynamics.

Note that up to constant factors, this criterion for accurate modelling is the same as the stability criterion (3.123) for RK4 when the kinetic term dominates the Hamiltonian. Therefore although first-order split-step as argued above appears to be more forgiving to FEDVR than RK4 is, this is no longer the case when modelling the GPE as opposed to the linear Schrödinger wave equation, and although I didn’t extend the argument in the previous section to second or fourth order split-step (figuring out which commutator is the leading term is much more involved), they too are subject to the same requirement to sample the nonlinear term this frequently, even if their linear pseudo-stability region might be larger.

#### 3.4.5 Conclusion

This leaves us with little remaining benefit to FEDVR over finite differences for the Schrödinger wave and Gross–Pitaevskii equations. The argument that FEDVR scales better for parallel computation is unconvincing as argued above. The fact that it allows nonuniform grids is also not unique—central finite differences allow for nonuniform grids as well [73]. Reference [62] compares the accuracy of finite differences to FEDVR in the context of computing the groundstate energy of a harmonic oscillator using imaginary time evolution (see section 3.5.1), but only uses second-order finite differences in the



**Figure 3.12:** Comparison of accuracy of different discretisation methods in representing the ground-state of a harmonic oscillator  $V(x) = x^2$  in a spatial region  $-10 < x < 10$ . For the FEDVR results, 20 elements were used with a varying number of DVR points per element, leading to decreasing error in the groundstate energy with increasing number of points. For each number of DVR basis points, finite difference operators are produced using the same total number of points, but on a uniform grid. This is still not a fair comparison however, because it is not equally computationally expensive to apply a FEDVR operator or a finite differences operator to a state vector. As mentioned in earlier sections, the cost of applying operators is dependent on their bandwidth—related to how many surrounding points are coupled to each point by the operator. This comparison is made above by computing the *average* bandwidth of each FEDVR operator (since it is not the same for all points), and shading in the region between the two finite differencing orders that have bandwidths either side of the result. The resulting shaded region shows FEDVR and finite differences are quite comparable when judged by accuracy at fixed cost of applying operators, with the gap small enough to be closed by increasing the bandwidth of a finite differencing scheme only by one.

comparison whereas higher-order FEDVR schemes are used. If this restriction was in order to hold the number of points transferred at boundaries between parallel computing units constant (since second-order finite differences require, like FEDVR, only one per timestep), then this is not an equal comparison as the number of points transferred does not limit computation time as I've shown—had the authors included comparisons with higher order finite differencing schemes, they would have resulted in comparable accuracy (see Figure 3.12) between FEDVR and finite differences, but with finite differences completing in less time owing to the larger timesteps allowed by the increased range of stability of finite differences.

Perhaps for problems with certain unusual boundary conditions or strangely shaped regions, or where one can construct a geometric integrator that conserves some quantities of interest other than merely the wavefunction norm, FEDVR may still make sense. But unless there is a compelling reason, it seems that simple finite differences, as naïve as it might seem at first, remains a practical choice for highly accurate and potentially massively parallelised simulations of the GPE.

### 3.5 Finding ground states

For systems with continuous degrees of freedom, such as Bose–Einstein condensates, finding groundstates by directly diagonalising the Hamiltonian matrix is impractical due

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

to the size of said matrix, which we normally avoid even constructing for systems with more than one dimension when simply propagating condensate wavefunctions in time. The pseudo-Hamiltonian for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation is not even linear, implying direct diagonalisation would not even return groundstates unless one diagonalised matrices repeatedly, each with an improved estimate of the groundstate until a self-consistent solution was found.

Below are two methods that are typically used instead to find groundstates in these cases, as well as a generalisation (which only applies to linear systems) for finding other excited states of quantum systems.

### 3.5.1 Imaginary time evolution

Imaginary time evolution [79] is a robust, if somewhat inefficient method of finding groundstates of quantum systems, and can be generalised to finding excited states as well (Section 3.5.3, below). The basic idea is to evolve the following differential equation:

$$\hbar \frac{d\psi}{dt} = -H\psi \quad (3.129)$$

in time instead of the time-dependent Schrödinger equation (3.3), for some wavefunction or state vector  $\psi$  and matrix/linear operator  $H$ . The name *imaginary time evolution* is due to the fact that this differential equation can be obtained by making the substitution  $t \rightarrow -it$  in the time-dependent Schrödinger equation, and hence can be thought of as propagating the Schrödinger equation in (negative) imaginary time. This method is capable of evolving an initial guess for  $\psi$  into the groundstate of the given Hamiltonian. The reason behind this can be seen if we rewrite (3.129) in the eigenbasis of  $H$  with eigenvalues  $\{E_n\}$  and eigenkets  $\{|n\rangle\}$ :

$$\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \langle n|\psi(t)\rangle = -E_n \langle \phi_n|\psi(t)\rangle, \quad (3.130)$$

which has solutions:

$$\langle n|\psi(t)\rangle = \exp\left[-\frac{E_n}{\hbar}t\right] \langle n|\psi(0)\rangle, \quad (3.131)$$

that is, the coefficient of each eigenstate exponentially decays with a decay rate proportional to its energy. After enough time has elapsed (much larger than the difference in decay timescales between the two lowest lying eigenstates), all coefficients  $\langle n|\psi(t)\rangle$  will have decayed, but the coefficient corresponding to the groundstate will have decayed by far the least, leading to any initial superposition evolving into one dominated by the groundstate.

This method is flexible and robust, and can be used to find groundstates subject to imposed conditions such as a phase winding about a point, resulting in a vortex state. It can also be used to ‘smooth’ candidate wavefunctions, making a guessed initial state of a condensate wavefunction more like a physically realistic one by lowering its energy somewhat, but not propagating far enough to obtain the actual groundstate. This smoothing method is used in Section 3.6 to create an approximately correct density profile for a condensate wavefunction after the phase patterns for randomly distributed vortices are artificially imposed, resulting in physically realistic initial conditions for a turbulent condensate.

For practical reasons, exponential decay cannot be carried out indefinitely, as eventually all numbers underflow to zero as they become too small to be represented on a computer. In addition, the wavefunction/state vector obtained after exponential decay will not be normalised. For these reasons, one often normalises the wavefunction/state vector to unit norm in between each step of imaginary time evolution.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

Normalisation must be paid attention particularly in the case of the Gross–Pitaevskii equation, since it has a nonlinear pseudo-Hamiltonian. This pseudo-Hamiltonian must always be evaluated with a normalised condensate wavefunction as input, otherwise the imaginary time evolution may, depending on the numerical method employed, produce a final condensate wavefunction which is the groundstate not in the presence of the actual nonlinear term, but in the presence of one that has had one timestep worth of exponential decay applied to it. Since the magnitude of the wavefunction matters in the Gross–Pitaevskii equation, one must normalise every time a nonlinear  $H$  is evaluated in order to prevent this problem (which can also be mitigated by taking tiny timesteps to minimise the amount of decay within each timestep, but this is wasteful when larger steps could otherwise be used).

An exception to the above normalisation warning is when a first order explicit method such as the first-order split step method (Section 3.2.4) or the Euler method is used—since these methods only ever evaluate the nonlinear pseudo-Hamiltonian at the start of a timestep, normalising the wavefunction once per timestep is sufficient, whereas when using higher order methods that evaluate the pseudo-Hamiltonian at intermediate times one will have to take care to normalise more often.

The imaginary time evolution method is a *relaxation method*, and as such only the final wavefunction/state vector after a sufficient period of evolution is of interest, not the intermediate states. As such, inaccurate but fast methods such as first order split-step or the Euler method may be readily employed, and used with the largest timesteps that do not lead to numerical instability. Second order Runge–Kutta (the explicit midpoint method) can be a good balance due to being faster per-step than more accurate methods, whilst allowing larger timesteps than the Euler method due to better stability characteristics.

A final note is that energies of quantum systems are arbitrary up to a global additive constant, and so energies can be negative or positive or some mix of both in the same system. In this case, imaginary time evolution can have some or all coefficients of energy eigenstates exponentially *growing* rather than decaying. This does not modify the end result at all, as the groundstate energy, if negative, will be more negative than any other energy and hence its coefficient will exponentially grow faster than all others. If an estimate of the groundstate energy is known ahead of time, it can be advantageous to offset the system Hamiltonian with a constant energy such that the groundstate energy is approximately zero, which minimises the amount of exponential growth/decay and allows for the largest timesteps within the stability range of the numerical method employed. One can even dynamically compute an energy or chemical potential estimate<sup>26</sup> to update the energy offset as the computation proceeds. Imaginary time evolution can be slow enough for non-trivial cases that these considerations can be relevant.

Since imaginary time evolution comprises the evolution of a state vector in time, it is amenable to all the parallel processing techniques we have outlined in this chapter depending on the timestepping and spatial discretisation employed.

### 3.5.2 Successive over-relaxation

Successive over-relaxation (SOR) [80] is a much faster method of finding groundstates than imaginary time evolution, but slightly less flexible. Strictly speaking (that is, before any ad-hoc modifications), SOR is a method for solving linear systems of the form:

$$A\psi = \mathbf{b}, \quad (3.132)$$

for some unknown vector (or discretised function)  $\psi$  given a vector (or discretised function)  $\mathbf{b}$  for the right hand side and a matrix (or discretised linear operator)  $A$  for the left hand side. The method is of most benefit when  $A$  is diagonally dominant, lending SOR to use with finite difference methods. As with imaginary time evolution, SOR re-

<sup>26</sup>Note that the energy of a BEC using the Gross–Pitaevskii pseudo-Hamiltonian cannot be computed simply as the expectation value of the pseudo-Hamiltonian—this double counts the nonlinear term, which should be halved in such energy calculations. The chemical potential however can be computed as this expectation value.

quires an initial guess for  $\psi$  that is repeatedly updated to produce an increasingly accurate approximate solution to the given linear system.

Successive over-relaxation proceeds by updating each element  $\psi_i$  of  $\psi$  one at a time to be more consistent with the linear system and all other estimated elements of  $\psi$ , by solving the  $i^{\text{th}}$  linear equation of (3.132) for  $\psi_i$  in terms of  $A$ ,  $b_i$ , and the other elements of  $\psi$ :

$$\psi_i = \frac{b_i - \sum_{j \neq i} A_{ij} \psi_j}{A_{ii}}. \quad (3.133)$$

If one updates every element  $\psi_i$  of  $\psi$  in this manner, based on the other elements  $\psi_{j \neq i}$  of the estimate for  $\psi$  at the previous iteration, the method that results is called the Jacobi method, with update rule:

$$\psi_{i \text{Jacobi}}^{(k+1)} = \frac{b_i - \sum_{j \neq i} A_{ij} \psi_j^{(k)}}{A_{ii}}, \quad (3.134)$$

where  $\psi^{(k)}$  is the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iterative estimate of  $\psi$ . If one allows use of already updated elements of  $\psi$  when updating subsequent elements of  $\psi$ , one obtains the more efficient Gauss–Seidel method:

$$\psi_{i \text{GS}}^{(k+1)} = \frac{b_i - \sum_{j \neq i} A_{ij} \psi_j^{(\text{latest})}}{A_{ii}}, \quad (3.135)$$

where  $\psi_j^{(\text{latest})} = \psi_j^{(k+1)}$  if  $\psi_j^{(k+1)}$  has been computed already, and  $\psi_j^{(k)}$  if not. Assuming elements of  $\psi$  are updated in order of increasing  $j$ , one can split the sum into two for these two cases and write:

$$\psi_{i \text{GS}}^{(k+1)} = \frac{b_i - \sum_{j < i} A_{ij} \psi_j^{(k+1)} - \sum_{j > i} A_{ij} \psi_j^{(k)}}{A_{ii}}, \quad (3.136)$$

which is how the method is often presented; however, since one can update elements in any order (or equivalently, the order of the basis vectors in  $\psi$  is arbitrary), I prefer the form (3.135) as it leaves the iteration order undetermined. One reason to impose an update order other than just that of increasing index in the array storing  $\psi$  in computer memory is to minimise communication latency in parallel implementations: one may choose to update points near one or more edges of the spatial region assigned to one CPU core or cluster node first, in order that they become available to other cores/nodes sooner, before updating the interior points that other cores/nodes do not depend on. In this case of parallel processing there isn't even a strict order since elements are being updated independently by separate cores/nodes simultaneously. Gauss–Seidel and successive over-relaxation still work well in this case, they just become a little more like the Jacobi method the more independent updates are occurring on different parts of the vector  $\psi$ .

The final feature of successive over-relaxation is that elements of  $\psi$  are updated not to the values given by the Gauss–Seidel method, but overshoot them by a factor  $\alpha$ :

$$\psi_{i \text{SOR}}^{(k+1)} = \psi_i^{(k)} + \alpha \left( \frac{b_i - \sum_{j \neq i} A_{ij} \psi_j^{(\text{latest})}}{A_{ii}} - \psi_i^{(k)} \right). \quad (3.137)$$

where  $\alpha < 2$  is the convergence criterion in the case of an infinite system.<sup>27</sup>

So what are  $A$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  for quantum mechanics problems? One deviation from pure SOR used in cold atom physics is to allow both  $A$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  to have dependence on  $\psi$ , which

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

<sup>27</sup>With the deviation from strict SOR by using non-constant  $A$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  mentioned below, and parallel updates as mentioned above, as well as the fact that systems are not infinite,  $\alpha$  in the range of 1.6 to 1.8 is realistic to ensure stability in Gross–Pitaevskii equation simulations.

in practice does not prevent the method from finding solutions. For the groundstate of the Gross–Pitaevskii equation, we can write:

$$H(\psi)\psi = \mu\psi \quad (3.138)$$

where  $\mu$  is the chemical potential of the condensate in its groundstate and  $H(\psi)$  is the matrix for some discretisation of the Gross–Pitaevskii pseudo-Hamiltonian,<sup>28</sup> to which we can then apply a single iteration of SOR by updating all elements of  $\psi$  in some order using (3.137) with  $A^{(k)} = H(\psi^{(k)})$  and  $\mathbf{b}^{(k)} = \mu\psi^{(k)}$  to produce an improved estimate  $\psi^{(k+1)}$  of the groundstate based on the previous estimate  $\psi^{(k)}$ :

$$\psi_{i,\text{SOR}}^{(k+1)} = \psi_i^{(k)} + \alpha \left( \frac{\mu\psi_i^{(k)} - \sum_{j \neq i} H_{ij}(\psi^{(k)})\psi_j^{(\text{latest})}}{A_{ii}} - \psi_i^{(k)} \right). \quad (3.139)$$

$A^{(k+1)}$  and  $\mathbf{b}^{(k+1)}$  can then be computed based on  $\psi^{(k+1)}$  and the process repeated to provide increasingly accurate approximate solutions.

A difference between successive over-relaxation and imaginary time evolution is that SOR finds the state with chemical potential  $\mu$  (replaceable by the energy  $E$  for a linear quantum system), as opposed to the groundstate. In this way successive over-relaxation doesn't tell you what the groundstate energy is, it requires that as input. Typically to find a Gross–Pitaevskii groundstate I will analytically estimate the chemical potential for a given number of atoms or peak density, or whatever my requirement is, using the Thomas–Fermi approximation, and then find the state with that chemical potential using SOR. This results in minor differences compared to the peak density or atom number originally targeted, but the requirement is not usually strict enough for this to be of consequence. For the Gross–Pitaevskii equation, the ability of the atom number to vary means a condensate wavefunction with the given chemical potential can always be found.

However, sometimes one desires the groundstate of the Gross–Pitaevskii pseudo-Hamiltonian given a certain atom number, or one may be solving the time-independent linear Schrödinger equation and not know the eigenstate energies. In the former case one can to normalise  $\psi$  to the desired atom number at each step to impose fixed atom number, but then SOR will not converge to a stationary state/eigenstate unless one has by chance guessed the correct chemical potential. SOR will also not converge for the linear Schrödinger equation<sup>29</sup> unless the energy given corresponds to an actual eigenstate.

A strategy that works is to dynamically update the targeted  $\mu$  (or  $E$ ) as SOR proceeds, by computing the expectation value of  $H$  using the current best estimate of  $\psi$  after each SOR step:

$$\psi_{i,\text{SOR}}^{(k+1)} = \psi_i^{(k)} + \alpha \left( \frac{\mu^{(k)}\psi_i^{(k)} - \sum_{j \neq i} H_{ij}(\psi^{(k)})\psi_j^{(\text{latest})}}{A_{ii}} - \psi_i^{(k)} \right), \quad (3.140)$$

where

$$\mu^{(k)} = \frac{\psi^{*(k)} \cdot H(\psi^{(k)})\psi^{(k)}}{\psi^{*(k)} \cdot \psi^{(k)}} \quad (3.141)$$

This process of dynamically updating the targeted chemical potential or energy can find stationary states and eigenstates, but not necessarily the groundstate. Different initial guesses for  $\psi$  may result in convergence to different stationary states/eigenstates, and some attention and guidance from the programmer is required in order to craft initial guesses that result in convergence to the desired states.

<sup>28</sup>A subtle consequence of  $A$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  depending on  $\psi$  is that we cannot simplify this to  $(H(\psi) - \mu)\psi = 0$ , as this would admit  $\psi = \mathbf{0}$  as a solution. As written, (3.138) also admits  $\psi = \mathbf{0}$  as a solution, however,  $A^{(k)} = H(\psi^{(k)})$  and  $\mathbf{b}^{(k)} = \mu\psi^{(k)}$  are treated as constants within a single iteration of SOR, preventing the method from approaching zero as a solution within each step compared to if  $\psi$  was present only on the left hand side.

<sup>29</sup>Because normalisation for the linear Schrödinger equation is arbitrary, one ought to either normalise  $\psi$  at every step, or impose a boundary condition at a single point where  $\psi$  is nonzero (simply not updating that point in each SOR step), and normalise once at the end in order to prevent  $\psi$  growing or shrinking without limit.

### 3.5.3 Generalisation to excited states via Gram–Schmidt orthonormalisation

<sup>30</sup>Realised independently by me, but not original [81].

Directly diagonalising a Hamiltonian can be costly in a spatial basis. Another approach<sup>30</sup> (for the linear Schrödinger equation) is to find the groundstate using one of the above techniques, and then repeat the process with a fresh initial guess, subtracting off the wavefunction's projection onto the already found ground state at every step. This yields the lowest energy state that is orthogonal to the first—i.e. the first excited state. Repeating the process, but subtracting at each step the projection onto *both* eigenstates found so far, then yields the second excited state and so forth. This is simply the Gram–Schmidt process for finding orthonormal vectors, with the additional step of relaxing each vector to the lowest possible energy given the orthogonality requirement—this ensures the eigenstates of the Hamiltonian are produced, rather than a different orthonormal basis. Extra conditions can be imposed on the wavefunction at each relaxation step in order to obtain particular solutions in the case of degenerate eigenstates. For example, a phase winding can be imposed in order to obtain a particular harmonic oscillator state, otherwise this process produces an arbitrary superposition of basis states that have equal energy.

For the case of successive over-relaxation used with the linear Schrödinger equation, as mentioned in Section 3.5.2, one often cannot predict which eigenstate results when the targeted energy is not already known—the groundstate is not necessarily the one produced by SOR. Nonetheless, relaxation to *some* eigenstate or other, subject to the state vector being orthonormal to all eigenstates found so far, will produce an additional orthonormal eigenstate each time, just not necessarily in order from lowest to highest energy.

## 3.6 Fourth order Runge–Kutta in an instantaneous local interaction picture

Consider the differential equation for the components of a state vector  $|\psi(t)\rangle$  in a particular basis with basis vectors  $|n\rangle$ . This might simply be the Schrödinger equation, or perhaps some sort of nonlinear or other approximate, effective or phenomenological equation not corresponding to pure Hamiltonian evolution. Though they may have additional terms, such equations are generally of the form:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle n|\psi(t)\rangle = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \sum_m \langle n|\hat{H}(t)|m\rangle \langle m|\psi(t)\rangle, \quad (3.142)$$

where  $\langle n|\hat{H}(t)|m\rangle$  are the matrix elements in that basis of the Hamiltonian  $\hat{H}(t)$ , which in general can be time dependent, or even a function of  $|\psi(t)\rangle$ , depending on the exact type of equation in use. If  $\hat{H}(t)$  is almost diagonal in the  $|n\rangle$  basis, then the solution to (3.142) is dominated by simple dynamical phase evolution, that is:

$$|\psi(t)\rangle \approx \sum_m e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}E_mt} |m\rangle, \quad (3.143)$$

where  $E_m$  is the energy eigenvalue corresponding to the eigenstate  $|m\rangle$ .

A transformation into an interaction picture (IP) [54, p. 317] is commonly used to treat this part of the evolution analytically, before solving the remaining dynamics with further analytics or numerics. For numerical methods, integration in the interaction picture allows one to use larger integration timesteps, as one does not need to resolve the fast oscillations around the complex plane due to this dynamical phase.

Choosing an interaction picture typically involves diagonalising the time-independent part of a Hamiltonian, and then proceeding in the basis in which that time-independent

part is diagonal. However, often one has a good reason to perform computations in a different basis, in which the time independent part of the Hamiltonian is only approximately diagonal,<sup>31</sup> and transforming between bases may be computationally expensive (involving large matrix-vector multiplications). Furthermore, the Hamiltonian may change sufficiently during the time interval being simulated that the original time-independent Hamiltonian no longer dominates the dynamics at later times. In both these cases it would still be useful to factor out the time-local oscillatory dynamics in whichever basis is being used, in order to avoid taking unreasonably small timesteps.

To that end, suppose we decompose  $\hat{H}(t)$  into diagonal and non-diagonal (in the  $|n\rangle$  basis) parts at each moment in time:

$$\hat{H}(t) = \hat{H}_{\text{diag}}(t) + \hat{H}_{\text{nondiag}}(t), \quad (3.144)$$

and use the diagonal part at a specific time  $t = t'$  to define a time-independent Hamiltonian:

$$\hat{H}_0^{t'} = \hat{H}_{\text{diag}}(t'), \quad (3.145)$$

which is diagonal in the  $|n\rangle$  basis. We can then use then use  $\hat{H}_0^{t'}$  to define an interaction picture state vector:

$$|\psi_I^{t'}(t)\rangle = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(t-t')\hat{H}_0^{t'}} |\psi(t)\rangle, \quad (3.146)$$

which obeys the differential equation:

$$\frac{d}{dt} |\psi_I^{t'}(t)\rangle = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(t-t')\hat{H}_0^{t'}} \frac{d}{dt} |\psi(t)\rangle + \frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_0^{t'} |\psi_I^{t'}(t)\rangle, \quad (3.147)$$

where:

$$|\psi(t)\rangle = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(t-t')\hat{H}_0^{t'}} |\psi_I^{t'}(t)\rangle \quad (3.148)$$

is the original Schrödinger picture (SP) state vector.

This transformation is exact, no approximations or assumptions have been made. If indeed the dynamics of  $|\psi(t)\rangle$  in the given basis are dominated by fast oscillating dynamical phases, that is, the diagonals of  $\hat{H}_{\text{diag}}(t)$  are much greater than all matrix elements of  $\hat{H}_{\text{nondiag}}(t)$  in the  $|n\rangle$  basis, then solving the differential equation (3.147) for  $|\psi_I^{t'}(t)\rangle$  should allow one to use larger integration timesteps than solving (3.142) directly. And if not, then it should do no harm other than the (small) computational costs of computing some extra scalar exponentials.

Equation (3.146) defines an *instantaneous* interaction picture, in that it depends on the dynamics at a specific time  $t = t'$ , and can be recomputed repeatedly throughout a computation in order to factor out the fast dynamical phase evolution even as the oscillation rates change over time. It is *local* in that  $H_0^{t'}$  is diagonal in the  $|n\rangle$  basis, which means that transformations between Schrödinger picture and interaction picture state vectors involves ordinary, elementwise exponentiation of vectors, rather than matrix products. Thus (3.146), (3.147) and (3.148) can be written componentwise as:

$$\langle n | \psi_I^{t'}(t) \rangle = e^{i(t-t')\omega_n^{t'}} \langle n | \psi(t) \rangle, \quad (3.149)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle n | \psi_I^{t'}(t) \rangle = e^{i(t-t')\omega_n^{t'}} \frac{d}{dt} \langle n | \psi(t) \rangle + i\omega_n^{t'} \langle n | \psi_I^{t'}(t) \rangle, \quad (3.150)$$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

<sup>31</sup>For example, a spatial basis which allows for partitioning the integration region over multiple nodes on a cluster or cores on a GPU.

and:

$$\langle n|\psi(t)\rangle = e^{-i(t-t')\omega_n^{t'}} \langle n|\psi_I^{t'}(t)\rangle, \quad (3.151)$$

where we have defined:

$$\omega_n^{t'} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \langle n|\hat{H}_0^{t'}|n\rangle \quad (3.152)$$

This is in contrast to fourth order Runge–Kutta in the interaction picture (`RK4IP`) [78], in which the interaction picture uses the Fourier basis and thus transforming to and from it involves fast Fourier transforms (FFTs). `RK4IP` was developed to augment computations in which FFTs were already in use for evaluating spatial derivatives, and so its use of FFTs imposes no additional cost. Nonetheless, an interaction picture based on the kinetic term of the Schrödinger equation (which is the term of the Hamiltonian that `RK4IP` takes as its time-independent part) may not be useful if that term does not dominate the Hamiltonian, as in the case of a Bose–Einstein condensate in the Thomas–Fermi limit. We compare the two methods below.

### 3.6.1 Algorithm

The *fourth order Runge–Kutta in an instantaneous local interaction picture* `RK4ILIP` algorithm is now obtained by using (3.146) to define a new interaction picture at the beginning of each fourth-order Runge–Kutta (`RK4`) integration timestep. The differential equation and initial conditions supplied to the algorithm are in the ordinary Schrödinger picture, and the interaction picture is used only within a timestep, with the Schrödinger picture state vector returned at the end of each timestep. Thus differential equations need not be modified compared to if ordinary `RK4` were being used, and the only modification to calling code required is for a function to compute and return  $\omega_n^{t'}$ .

Being based on fourth order Runge–Kutta integration, this new method enjoys all the benefits of a workhorse method that is time-proven, and—as evidenced by its extremely widespread use—at a sweet-spot of ease of implementation, accuracy, and required computing power [82].

Below is the resulting algorithm for performing one integration timestep. It takes as input the time  $t_0$  at the start of the timestep, the timestep size  $\Delta t$ , an array  $\psi_0$  containing the components  $\{\langle n|\psi(t_0)\rangle\}$  of the state vector at time  $t_0$ , a function  $F(t, \psi)$  which takes a time and (the components of) a state vector and returns an array containing the time derivative of each component, and a function  $G(t, \psi)$  which takes the same inputs and returns an array containing the interaction picture oscillation frequency  $\omega_n$  for each component at that time.

For example, for the case of the Gross–Pitaevskii equation [83] in the spatial basis  $\psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \langle \mathbf{r}|\psi(t)\rangle$ , these would be:

$$F(t, \psi(\mathbf{r}, t)) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \left[ \underbrace{-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2}_{\hat{H}_{\text{nondiag}}} + \underbrace{V(\mathbf{r}, t) + g|\psi(\mathbf{r}, t)|^2}_{\hat{H}_{\text{diag}}} \right] \psi(\mathbf{r}, t), \quad (3.153)$$

and

$$G(t, \psi(\mathbf{r}, t)) = \frac{1}{\hbar} \underbrace{[V(\mathbf{r}, t) + g|\psi(\mathbf{r}, t)|^2]}_{\hat{H}_{\text{diag}}}. \quad (3.154)$$

Note that each symbol in bold in the algorithm below denotes an array containing one element for each basis vector  $|n\rangle$ , subscripts denote the different stages of `RK4`, and

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

all arithmetic operations between arrays are elementwise<sup>32</sup>. The only opportunity for non-elementwise operations to occur is within  $F$ , which contains the details (via  $\hat{H}_{\text{nondiag}}$ ) of any couplings between basis states for whatever system of equations is being solved, for example, using FFTs or finite differences to evaluate the Laplacian in (3.153).

<sup>32</sup>For example, the expression  $\mathbf{a} \leftarrow e^{-i\omega\Delta t}\mathbf{b}$  indicates that for all  $n$ ,  $a_n \leftarrow e^{-i\omega_n\Delta t}b_n$ , where  $a_n$  denotes the  $n^{\text{th}}$  element of  $\mathbf{a}$  etc.

---

**Algorithm 1** RK4ILIP

---

```

1: function RK4ILIP( $t_0, \Delta t, \psi_0, F$ )
2:    $f_1 \leftarrow F(t_0, \psi_0)$                                  $\triangleright$  First evaluation of Schrödinger picture DE
3:    $\omega \leftarrow G(t_0, \psi_0)$                                  $\triangleright$  Oscillation frequencies:  $\hbar\omega_n = \langle n|\hat{H}_{\text{diag}}(t_0)|n\rangle$ 
4:    $k_1 \leftarrow f_1 + i\omega\psi_0$                              $\triangleright$  Evaluate (3.150) with  $t - t' = 0$ 
5:    $\phi_1 \leftarrow \psi_0 + k_1 \frac{\Delta t}{2}$                    $\triangleright$  First RK4 estimate of IP state vector, at  $t = t_0 + \frac{\Delta t}{2}$ 
6:    $\psi_1 \leftarrow e^{-i\omega \frac{\Delta t}{2}} \phi_1$              $\triangleright$  Convert first estimate back to SP with (3.151)
7:    $f_2 \leftarrow F(t_0 + \frac{\Delta t}{2}, \psi_1)$            $\triangleright$  Second evaluation of Schrödinger picture DE
8:    $k_2 \leftarrow e^{i\omega \frac{\Delta t}{2}} f_2 + i\omega\phi_1$      $\triangleright$  Evaluate (3.150) with  $t - t' = \frac{\Delta t}{2}$ 
9:    $\phi_2 \leftarrow \psi_0 + k_2 \frac{\Delta t}{2}$                    $\triangleright$  Second RK4 estimate of IP state vector, at  $t = t_0 + \frac{\Delta t}{2}$ 
10:   $\psi_2 \leftarrow e^{-i\omega \frac{\Delta t}{2}} \phi_2$                $\triangleright$  Convert second estimate back to SP with (3.151)
11:   $f_3 \leftarrow F(t_0 + \frac{\Delta t}{2}, \psi_2)$            $\triangleright$  Third evaluation of Schrödinger picture DE
12:   $k_3 \leftarrow e^{i\omega \frac{\Delta t}{2}} f_3 + i\omega\phi_2$      $\triangleright$  Evaluate (3.150) with  $t - t' = \frac{\Delta t}{2}$ 
13:   $\phi_3 \leftarrow \psi_0 + k_3 \Delta t$                        $\triangleright$  Third RK4 estimate of IP state vector, at  $t = t_0 + \Delta t$ 
14:   $\psi_3 \leftarrow e^{-i\omega \Delta t} \phi_3$                  $\triangleright$  Convert third estimate back to SP with (3.151)
15:   $f_4 \leftarrow F(t_0 + \Delta t, \psi_3)$            $\triangleright$  Fourth evaluation of Schrödinger picture DE
16:   $k_4 \leftarrow e^{i\omega \Delta t} f_4 + i\omega\phi_3$        $\triangleright$  Evaluate (3.150) with  $t - t' = \Delta t$ 
17:   $\phi_4 \leftarrow \psi_0 + \frac{\Delta t}{6} (k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4)$      $\triangleright$  Fourth RK4 estimate, at  $t = t_0 + \Delta t$ 
18:   $\psi_4 \leftarrow e^{-i\omega \Delta t} \phi_4$                  $\triangleright$  Convert fourth estimate back to SP with (3.151)
19:  return  $\psi_4$                                       $\triangleright$  Return the computed SP state vector at  $t = t_0 + \Delta t$ 
20: end function

```

---

### Note on imaginary time evolution

When RK4ILIP is used for imaginary time evolution (ITE) [84], the oscillation frequencies  $\omega$  may have a large imaginary part. If the initial guess is different enough from the ground state, then the exponentials in (3.149), (3.150) and (3.151) may result in numerical overflow. To prevent this, one can define a clipped copy of  $\omega$ ,

$$\omega_{\text{clipped}} = \text{Re}(\omega) + i \begin{cases} -\frac{\log X}{\Delta t} & \text{Im}(\omega)\Delta t < -\log X \\ \text{Im}(\omega) & -\log X \leq \text{Im}(\omega)\Delta t \leq \log X \\ \frac{\log X}{\Delta t} & \text{Im}(\omega)\Delta t > \log X \end{cases}, \quad (3.155)$$

where  $X$  is very large but less than the largest representable floating-point number, and use  $\omega_{\text{clipped}}$  in the exponents instead. In the below results I used RK4ILIP with ITE to smooth initial states of a Bose–Einstein condensate after a phase printing, and performed clipping with<sup>33</sup>  $\log X = 400$ .

This clipped version of  $\omega$  should be used in all exponents in the above algorithm, but only in exponents—not in the second term of (3.150). If it is used everywhere then all we have done is chosen a different (less useful) interaction picture, and the algorithm will still overflow. By clipping only the exponents, we produce temporarily “incorrect” evolution<sup>34</sup>, limiting the change in magnitude of each component of the state vector to a factor of  $X$  per step (remembering that  $X$  is very large). This continues for the few steps that it takes ITE to get all components of the state vector to within a factor of  $X$  of the

<sup>33</sup>400 being about half the largest (base  $e$ ) exponent representable in double-precision floating point.

<sup>34</sup>Of no concern since we are using ITE as a relaxation method, and are not interested in intermediate states. Only the final state’s correctness concerns us.

```

rev:      117 (94dec1aa1706)
author:  chrisjbillington
date:    Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```

ground state, after which no clipping is necessary and convergence to the ground state proceeds as normal, subject to the ordinary limitations on which timesteps may be used with `ITE`.

### 3.6.2 Domain of improvement over other methods

For simulations in the spatial basis, `RK4ILIP` treats the spatially local part of the Hamiltonian analytically to first order, and hence can handle larger potentials than ordinary `RK4`. However, since a global energy offset can be applied to any potential with no physically meaningful change in the results, ordinary `RK4` can also handle large potentials — if they are large due to a large constant term which can simply be subtracted off.

So `RK4ILIP` is only of benefit in the case of large *spatial variations* in the potential. Only one constant can be subtracted off potentials without changing the physics — subtracting a spatially varying potential would require modification of the differential equation in the manner of a gauge transformation in order to leave the system physically unchanged<sup>35</sup>.

However that's not quite all: large spatial variation in potentials often comes with the prospect of the potential energy turning into kinetic energy, in which case `RK4ILIP` is also of little benefit, since in order to resolve the dynamical phase due to the large kinetic term, it would require timesteps just as small as those which ordinary `RK4` would need to resolve the dynamical phase evolution from the large potential term.

This leaves `RK4ILIP` with an advantage only in the case of large spatial variations in the potential that do not lead to equally large kinetic energies. Hence the examples I show in the next section are ones in which the condensate is trapped in a steep potential well—the trap walls are high and hence involve large potentials compared to the interior, but do not lead to large kinetic energies because the condensate is trapped close to its ground state.

The Fourier split-step (`FSS`) method [85] (see Section 3.4.1) also models dynamical phases due to the potential analytically to low order. As such it is also quite capable of modeling large potentials. However, it requires that all operators be diagonal in either the spatial basis or the Fourier basis [85]. Therefore `BECs` in rotating frames, due to the Hamiltonian containing an angular momentum operator, are not amenable to simulation with `FSS`<sup>36</sup>.

This use of `FFTs` in both the `FSS` and `RK4IP` methods necessarily imposes periodic boundary conditions on a simulation, which may not be desirable. By contrast, if different boundary conditions are desired, finite differences instead of `FFTs` can be used to evaluate spatial derivatives in the `RK4` and `RK4ILIP` methods, so long as a sufficiently high-order finite difference scheme is used so as not to unacceptably impact accuracy.

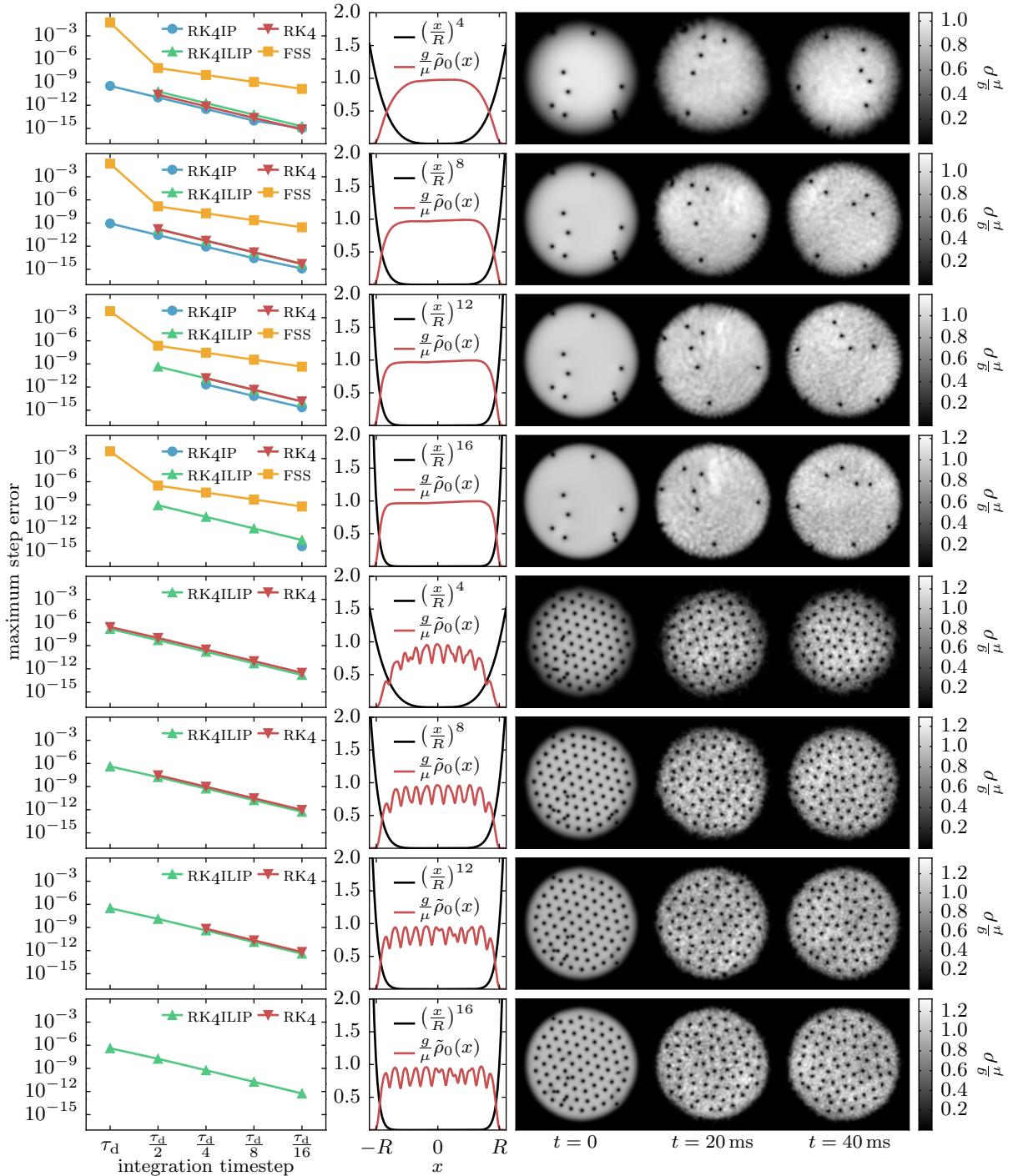
Along with the ability to impose arbitrary boundary conditions, finite differences require only local data, that is, only points spatially close to the point being considered need be known in order to evaluate derivatives there. This makes finite differences amenable to simulation on cluster computers [86, p. 100], with only a small number of points (depending on the order of the scheme) needing to be exchanged at node-boundaries each step. By contrast, `FFT` based derivatives require data from the entire spatial region. Whilst this can still be parallelised on a GPU, where all the data is available, it cannot be done on a cluster without large amounts of data transfer between nodes [75]. Thus, `RK4` and `RK4ILIP`, being implementable with finite difference schemes, are considerably friendlier to cluster computing.

Table 3.2 summarises the capabilities of the four methods considered in the following results section. `RK4ILIP` is the only method capable of modelling a large spatial variation in the potential term whilst being locally parallelisable, and supporting arbitrary operators and boundary conditions.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

Method	RK4	RK4IP	RK4ILIP	FSS
Error	$\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$	$\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$	$\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^4)$	$\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2)$
FFTs per step	4	4	4	2
Large $\Delta V$	No	No	Yes	Yes
Large kinetic term	No	Yes	No	Yes
Arbitrary operators	Yes	Yes <sup>†</sup>	Yes	No
Locally parallelisable	Yes	No	Yes	No
Arbitrary boundary conditions	Yes	No	Yes	No

**Table 3.2:** Advantages and disadvantages of four timestepping methods for simulating Bose–Einstein condensates. *Large  $\Delta V$*  refers to whether the method can simulate potentials that vary throughout space by an amount larger than the energy scale  $2\pi\hbar/\Delta t$  associated with the simulation timestep  $\Delta t$ . *Arbitrary operators* refers to whether the method permits operators that are not diagonal in either the spatial or Fourier basis, such as angular momentum operators. *Locally parallelisable* means the method can be formulated so as to use only spatially nearby points in evaluating operators, and thus is amenable to parallelisation by splitting the simulation over multiple cores in the spatial basis. <sup>†</sup> Whilst one can include arbitrary operators within the RK4IP method, only operators diagonal in Fourier space can be analytically treated the way RK4IP treats the kinetic term, and so there is no advantage for these terms over ordinary RK4.



**Figure 3.13:** Results of simulations to compare **rl4ilip** to other timestepping methods. Top four rows: Nonrotating frame simulations with four different radial power-law potentials. Bottom four rows: Rotating frame simulations with same four potentials. Left column: maximum per-step error  $\int |\psi - \tilde{\psi}|^2 dr / \int |\tilde{\psi}|^2 dr$  of fourth order Runge-Kutta (RK4), its interaction picture variants (RK4IP and RK4ILIP) and Fourier split-step (FSS) as a function of timestep. Solutions were checked every 100 timesteps against a comparison solution  $\tilde{\psi}$  computed using half sized steps for RK4 methods, and quarter sized steps for FSS. Simulations encountering numerical overflow not plotted. Centre column: potential (black) and average density  $\tilde{\rho}_0$  of the initial state (red) over a slice of width  $R/5$  in the y direction. Right column: Density of solution at initial, intermediate and final times for each configuration simulated (taken from RK4ILIP results). RK4ILIP is the only method usable in rotating frames and not encountering overflow in the steeper traps for the timesteps considered.

```

rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```

### 3.6.3 Results

Here I compare four numerical methods: Fourier split-step (`FSS`), fourth order Runge–Kutta in the interaction picture (`RK4IP`), ordinary fourth order Runge–Kutta (`RK4`), and my new method — fourth order Runge–Kutta in an instantaneous local interaction picture (`RK4ILIP`).

The example chosen is a 2D simulation of a turbulent Bose–Einstein condensate, in both a rotating and nonrotating frame. For the nonrotating frame the differential equation simulated was equation (3.153), and for the rotating frame the same equation was with an additional two terms added to the Hamiltonian:

$$\hat{H}_{\text{rot}} + \hat{H}_{\text{comp}} = -\Omega \cdot \hat{\mathbf{L}} + \frac{1}{2} \hbar m^2 \Omega^2 r^2 \quad (3.156)$$

$$= i\hbar\Omega \left( x \frac{\partial}{\partial y} - y \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \hbar m^2 \Omega^2 r^2. \quad (3.157)$$

The addition of the first term transforms the original Hamiltonian into a frame rotating at angular frequency  $\Omega$  in the  $(x, y)$  plane, and is equivalent to the Coriolis and centrifugal forces that appear in rotating frames in classical mechanics [87]. The second term is a harmonic potential that exactly compensates for the centrifugal part of this force. In this way the only potential in the rotating frame is the applied trapping potential, and the only effect of the rotating frame is to add the Coriolis force.

Four trapping potentials were used, all radial power laws with different powers. These examples were chosen to demonstrate the specific situation in which `RK4ILIP` provides a benefit over the other methods for spatial Schrödinger-like equations, as discussed above.

The results of 120 simulation runs are shown in Figure 3.13. Each simulation was of a  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  condensate in the  $|F = 2, m_F = 2\rangle$  state, in which the two-body  $s$ -wave scattering length is  $a = 98.98$  Bohr radii [88]. The simulation region was  $20 \mu\text{m}$  in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions, and the Thomas–Fermi radius of the condensate was  $R = 9 \mu\text{m}$ . The chemical potential was  $\mu = 2\pi\hbar \times 1.91 \text{ kHz}$ , which is equivalent to a maximum Thomas–Fermi density  $\rho_{\text{max}} = 2.5 \times 10^{14} \text{ cm}^{-3}$  and a healing length  $\xi = 1.1 \mu\text{m}$ . There were 256 simulation grid points in each spatial dimension, which is 14 points per healing length.

Four different potentials were used, all of the form  $V(r) = \mu(r/R)^\alpha$  with  $\alpha = 4, 8, 12, 16$ . For the rotating frame simulations, the rotation frequency was  $\Omega = 2\pi \times 148 \text{ Hz}$ . This is 89% of the effective harmonic trap frequency, defined as the frequency of a harmonic trap that would have the same Thomas–Fermi radius given the same chemical potential.

All ground states were determined using successive over-relaxation (See section 3.5.2) with sixth-order finite differences for spatial derivatives. For the nonrotating simulations, convergence was reached with  $\Delta\mu/\mu < 1 \times 10^{-13}$ , with:

$$\Delta\mu = \sqrt{\frac{\langle \psi | (\hat{H} - \mu)^2 | \psi \rangle}{\langle \psi | \psi \rangle}}, \quad (3.158)$$

where  $\hat{H}$  is the nonlinear Hamiltonian and  $\langle \mathbf{r} | \psi \rangle$  is the condensate wavefunction, which does not have unit norm. For the rotating frame simulations the ground states converged to  $\Delta\mu/\mu \approx 9 \times 10^{-7}, 2 \times 10^{-6}, 3 \times 10^{-6}$  and  $2 \times 10^{-6}$  for  $\alpha = 16, 12, 8$ , and 4 respectively.

After each ground state was found, it was multiplied by a spatially varying phase factor corresponding to the phase pattern of a number of randomly positioned vortices:

$$\psi_{\text{vortices}}(x, y) = \psi_{\text{groundstate}}(x, y) \prod_{n=1}^N e^{\pm_n i \arctan 2(y - y_n, x - x_n)} \quad (3.159)$$

where  $\arctan 2$  is the two-argument arctan function,<sup>37</sup>  $N = 30$ ,  $\pm_n$  is a randomly chosen

`rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)`

`author: chrisjbillington`

`date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100`

`summary: hvsc`

<sup>37</sup>Defined as the principle value of the argument of the complex number  $x + iy$ :

$\arctan 2(y, x) = \text{Arg}(x + iy)$ .

sign, and  $(x_n, y_n)$  are vortex positions randomly drawn from a Gaussian distribution centred on  $(0, 0)$  with standard deviation equal to the Thomas–Fermi radius  $R$ . The same seed was used for the pseudorandom number generator in each simulation run, and so the vortex positions were identical in each simulation run.

After vortex phase imprinting, the wavefunctions were evolved in imaginary time [84]. For the nonrotating frame simulations, imaginary time evolution was performed for a time interval equal to the chemical potential timescale  $\tau_\mu = 2\pi\hbar/\mu$ , and for the rotating frame simulations, for  $\tau_\mu/10$ . This was done to smooth out the condensate density in the vicinity of vortices, producing the correct density profile for vortex cores. However, since imaginary time evolution decreases the energy of the state indiscriminately, it also had the side effect of causing vortices of opposite sign to move closer together and annihilate. This decreased the number of vortices, and is the reason the smoothing step in the rotating frame simulations was cut short to  $\tau_\mu/10$ , as otherwise all vortices had time to annihilate with one of the lattice vortices. A vortex pair in the process of annihilating is visible in Figure 3.13 as a partially filled hole in the initial density profile near the top of the condensate in the  $\alpha = 4, 12$ , and  $16$  rotating frame simulations.<sup>38</sup>

<sup>38</sup>The initial states for the four different potentials are not identical, so by chance the corresponding vortex in the  $\alpha = 8$  case was not close enough to a lattice vortex to annihilate.

The smoothed, vortex imprinted states were then evolved in time for 40 ms. For each simulation, five different timesteps were used:  $\Delta t = \tau_d, \tau_d/2, \tau_d/4, \tau_d/8, \tau_d/16$ , where  $\tau_d = m\Delta x^2/\pi\hbar \approx 2.68 \mu\text{s}$  is the dispersion timescale associated with the grid spacing  $\Delta x$ , defined as the time taken to move one gridpoint at the group velocity of the Nyquist mode.

For the nonrotating frame simulations, spatial derivatives for the **RK4** and **RK4ILIP** methods were determined using the Fourier method (Section 3.4.1). This was to ensure a fair comparison with the other two methods, which necessarily use Fourier transforms to perform computations pertaining due to the kinetic term.

For the rotating frame simulations, sixth-order finite differences with zero boundary conditions were used instead for the kinetic terms of the **RK4** and **RK4ILIP** methods, which were the only two methods used for those simulations (due to the other methods being incompatible with the angular momentum operator required for a rotating frame). This choice was fairly arbitrary, but did allow the condensate to be closer to the boundary than is otherwise possible with the periodic boundary conditions imposed by use of the Fourier method for spatial derivatives. This is because the rotating frame Hamiltonian is not periodic in space, and so its discontinuity at the boundary can be a problem if the wavefunction is not sufficiently small there.

As shown in Figure 3.13, all methods tested generally worked well until they didn't work at all, with the per-step error of **RK4**-based methods being either small and broadly the same as the other **RK4**-based methods, or growing rapidly to the point of numerical overflow (shown as missing datapoints). The break down of **FSS** was less dramatic, though it too had a clear jump in its per-step error for larger timesteps. Comparing methods therefore came down to mostly whether or not a simulation experienced numerical overflow during the time interval being simulated.

The main result was that **RK4ILIP** and **FSS** remained accurate over the widest range of timesteps and trap steepnesses, with **RK4** and **RK4IP** requiring ever smaller timesteps in order to not overflow as the trap steepness increased.

For the rotating frame simulations, which were only amenable to the **RK4** and **RK4ILIP** methods, the same pattern was observed, with **RK4** only working at smaller timesteps as the trap steepness was increased, and ultimately diverging for all timesteps tested at the maximum trap steepness. By contrast, **RK4ILIP** remained accurate over the entire range of timesteps at the maximum trap steepness.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

### 3.6.4 Discussion

As mentioned, **RK4ILIP** is mostly useful for continuum quantum mechanics only when there are large spatial differences in the potential, which cannot give rise to equally large kinetic energies<sup>39</sup>. Furthermore, the advantage that **RK4ILIP** has over other methods with that same property is that it does not require a particular form of Hamiltonian or a particular method of evaluating spatial derivatives. The former means it is applicable in rotating frames or to situations with unusual Hamiltonians, and the latter means it can be used with finite differences or **FEDVR** [62] and thus is amenable to parallelisation on a cluster computer.

The ability to model large spatial variations in the potential provides only a narrow domain of increased usefulness over other methods. If a large kinetic energy results from the large potential, then the method requires just as small timesteps as any other. And if the large potential is supposed to approximate an infinite well, then an actual infinite well may be modelled using zero boundary conditions, negating the need for something like **RK4ILIP**. However, when potential wells are steep, but not infinitely steep, here **RK4ILIP** provides a benefit. The only other model that can handle these large potentials—Fourier split-step—has the disadvantage that it cannot deal with arbitrary operators such as those arising from a rotating frame, and is not parallelisable with local data. The benefits of parallelisability are obvious, and the above results demonstrate **RK4ILIP**'s advantage at simulating BECs in tight traps and rotating frames.

Note that whilst the *Fourier* split-step method can't handle Hamiltonian terms such as  $\hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}$  that are not diagonal in either real space or Fourier space [55, p. 315], a split-step method based on an approximation to the momentum operator as a banded matrix, such as that obtained with finite differences, can. Using the techniques discussed in section 3.2.4, such a scheme is also parallelisable. The remaining limitations then, when compared to fourth-order Runge–Kutta are the restriction on the types of nonlinearity that can be included, and the complexity of implementation.

For systems with discrete degrees of freedom, **RK4ILIP** may be useful in the case where an approximate diagonalisation of the Hamiltonian is analytically known, and when the Hamiltonian's eigenvalues vary considerably in time (making a single interaction picture insufficient to factor out dynamical phases throughout the entire simulation). In this situation an analytic transformation into the diagonal basis can be performed at each timestep (or the differential equation analytically re-cast in that basis in the first place), and **RK4ILIP** can be used to factor out the time-varying dynamical phase evolution at each timestep. An example may be an atom with a magnetic moment in a time-varying magnetic field which varies over orders of magnitude. The transformation into the spin basis in the direction of the magnetic field can be analytically performed, and if the field varies by orders of magnitude, so do the eigenvalues of the Hamiltonian. Although the eigenvalues in this case and other similar cases can be computed analytically too, unless all time dependence of the Hamiltonian is known in advance of the simulation, it would be difficult to incorporate this into a re-casting of the differential equation in a time-dependent interaction picture. **RK4ILIP** may be useful in these cases to automate this process and evolve the system in the appropriate interaction picture at each timestep.

<sup>39</sup>This is essentially due to such a situation violating the condition we laid out at the beginning of this section — that the simulation basis must be nearly an eigenbasis of the total Hamiltonian.

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER

# 4

## Development of a cold atom physics experiment

- Describe how the apparatus was developed over time, what it was designed to do and everything we learned along the way. Include vacuum system design and bakeout, optical setups, atomic transport, etc. Not comprehensive, as I have not played a large role in much of the development of the apparatus itself.
- Dual species apparatus
- -> Vacuum chamber and bakeout
- Research visit report
- -> Describe setup of Tübingen experiment (despite lack of results). It's a simple MOT setup, so describing it includes details of optics required for a MOT, which I didn't work on in the Monash apparatus, so this is a good place to describe everything that goes into a MOT experimentally. Include full optics layout I designed.
- -> Optics setup
- -> [include layout diagram of setup I designed]

### 4.0.1 Vacuum system

Our vacuum system comprises three chambers—two *source* chambers and a central chamber. These sections are separated by differential pumping tubes, which are simply small tubes that restrict the passage of gas between the chambers<sup>1</sup>.

After assembly of the vacuum system, we constructed an oven around it and baked it out at approximately 200°C for about two weeks. This increases the rate of outgassing from the interior surfaces, decreasing the extent to which later outgassing of water and hydrogen can limit our pressure. After bakeout the system's pressure was measured with a residual gas analyser (RGA) to be in the vicinity of 10<sup>-11</sup> Torr. This was in the central chamber, which was and still is being pumped by two ion pumps and a titanium sublimation pump.

During the bakeout, the two side chambers were being pumped on by a turbomolecular pump, which was removed after baking was complete. This pumping was required to remove the products of outgassing in those chambers since the conduction to the central chamber through the differential pumping tubes is so poor.

After bakeout, the two side chambers<sup>2</sup> were brought up to atmospheric pressure with

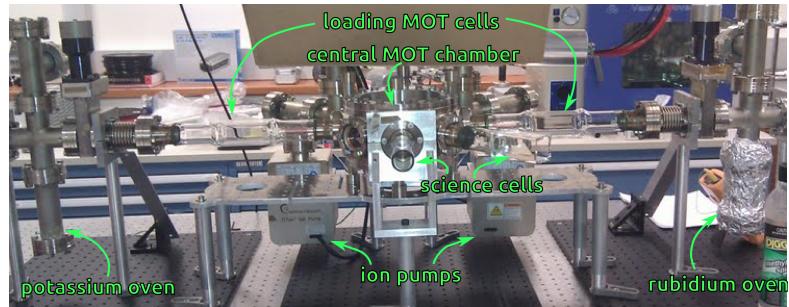
<sup>1</sup>This works very effectively at very low pressures due to the fact that atoms very rarely collide with each other—and so even a factor of a thousand difference in pressure across the tube results in very little pressure-gradient force on the gas.

<sup>2</sup>Which can be sealed from the central chamber with gate valves.

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc



**Figure 4.1:** The temporary oven built around the vacuum system during bakeout. Temperatures were controlled with variacs providing variable voltage to the heater tape, and temperatures were monitored using thermocouples and an SR630 thermocouple monitor set to cut off the power if the temperature went too high. The SR630 was also being polled constantly over the network so that the bakeout status could be monitored remotely.



**Figure 4.2:** The vacuum system after bakeout and insertion of alkali metal ampoules.

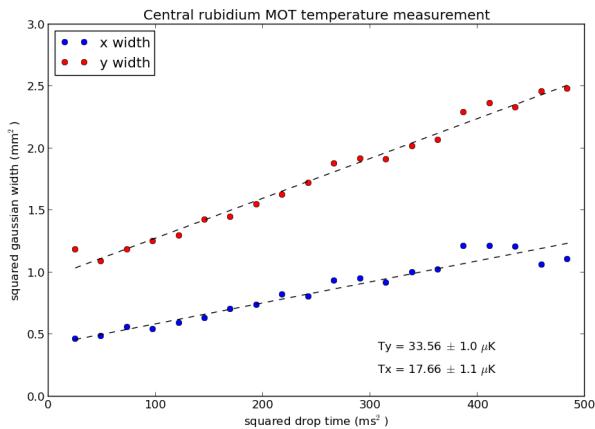
<sup>3</sup>Which comes off the interior surfaces without much baking, and in fact protects the system from other—more difficult to remove—contaminants such as water from depositing on the surfaces.

<sup>4</sup>Operating under a safety and control system written on embedded electronics by Phil Starkey.

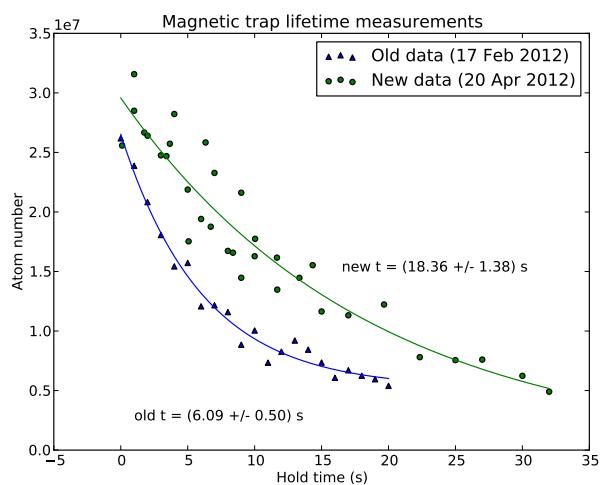
<sup>5</sup>39°C and 64°C for rubidium and potassium respectively.

dry nitrogen<sup>3</sup>, and ampoules of the alkali metals we'll be using in our experiments—rubidium and potassium—were inserted. After pumping down and lightly baking once more, two metal weights that had been magnetically suspended above the ampoules were released and — after a few attempts—used to break the ampoules open. Heating elements on both chambers<sup>4</sup> have since been heating the metals to near their melting points<sup>5</sup>, which should, based on the known dependence of the metals' partial pressures on temperature, provide a background pressure of approximately  $10^{-6}$  Torr [?, ?].

Unfortunately it seemed that the pressure of hydrogen in the rubidium source chamber had been increasing since the bake, as recently noticed by RGA measurements of hydrogen in the central chamber, which diminished upon closing the gate valve in between. To address this, we are modifying that end of the vacuum system to include an ion pump. This was possible to do without having to break existing vacuum. Only the rubidium end was affected, presumably because it has a o-ring valve (where the pump during bakeout was attached) which a) could not be baked as hot as the rest of the system and b) may have been leaking. The addition of the new pump and a short bake of the local area appears to have alleviated the problem (Figure 4.4).



**Figure 4.3:** A temperature measurement of the rubidium MOT in the central chamber. Temperature was determined by measuring the rate of expansion of the atom cloud when released from the magnetic trap. The magnetic trap was switched off, and then the atoms were imaged with a pulse of light after being allowed to expand for a time. The expansion time was varied and compared to the size of the condensate in order to determine the expansion rate, which has a simple relation to temperature. This temperature was obtained without a polarisation gradient cooling stage, however it is lower than the Doppler limit ( $\approx 140 \mu\text{K}$ ) due to some PGC taking place regardless.



**Figure 4.4:** A measurement of the magnetic trap lifetime before and after an extra pump was added to the rubidium source chamber. The trap lifetime was measured by turning off the cooling beams such that atoms were trapped only magnetically, then waiting a time before fluorescence imaging with a pulse of light. By computing the number of atoms remaining from the fluorescence, and comparing with the delay time, the decay rate due to collisions with background gases was determined. An increase in the atom number has since been obtained, resulting in  $1.2 \times 10^8$  atoms, with the same trap lifetime.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

#### 4.0.2 Cooling and trapping of atoms

MOTs have been formed in both source chambers using anti-Helmholtz magnetic coils and Doppler beams. The cooling beams are circularly polarised in order to pump the cooling transition of the atoms, and there is also repump light to move atoms back into the cooling cycle when they decay to an undesired groundstate. Both MOTs collect atoms from the relatively high pressure background gas from the alkali ovens in the source chambers, before those atoms are transported to the central chamber.

#### 4.0.3 Transport of atoms

The initial idea was to use magnetic transport to move atoms into the central chamber of the vacuum system. Due to a delay in the construction of magnetic coil control electronics, another alternative was investigated in the meantime—the push-beam method. Magnetic transport, once attempted, proved to be less efficient (due high collisional losses during the slow transit), as well as technically challenging, and so we have continued to use the push-beam method, in which atoms are given momentum by resonant light from a single beam. Atoms are pushed by this beam into the central chamber, where they are caught in the MOT there. This has been done for rubidium but not yet for potassium.

## Software for experiment control and analysis

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

# A scripted control system for autonomous hardware-timed experiments

P. T. Starkey,<sup>a),b)</sup> C. J. Billington,<sup>a)</sup> S. P. Johnstone, M. Jasperse, K. Helmerson,  
L. D. Turner, and R. P. Anderson

*School of Physics, Monash University, Victoria 3800, Australia*

(Received 11 April 2013; accepted 17 July 2013; published online 8 August 2013)

We present the *labscrip* suite, an open-source experiment control system for automating shot-based experiments and their analysis. Experiments are composed as Python code, which is used to produce low-level hardware instructions. They are queued up and executed on the hardware in real time, synchronized by a pseudoclock. Experiment parameters are manipulated graphically, and analysis routines are run as new data are acquired. With this system, we can easily automate exploration of parameter spaces, including closed-loop optimization. © 2013 AIP Publishing LLC.  
[<http://dx.doi.org/10.1063/1.4817213>]

## I. INTRODUCTION

Modern experiments in quantum science demand flexible, autonomous control of heterogeneous hardware. Many such experiments are *shot*-based: a single experiment shot comprises analog, digital, and radiofrequency (rf) outputs operating under precise timing, as well as synchronized camera exposures and voltage measurements. Bose–Einstein condensation (BEC) experiments,<sup>1</sup> for example, require a timing resolution down to a few hundred nanoseconds, and may last for up to a minute. Output must, therefore, be hardware timed, requiring devices be programmed with instructions in advance of an experiment shot. Most measurements of interest require numerous shots, to build up statistics, or to observe the response of the system to varying parameters. Such repetition is common to experiments employing cold quantum gases or trapped ions for precision metrology,<sup>2</sup> quantum computation,<sup>3</sup> and quantum simulation.<sup>4</sup>

Individual shots are typically complex, requiring the coordination of many devices. This coordination is the role of a *control system*. A good control system should automate the programming of devices based on a high-level description of the experiment logic.<sup>5</sup> It should handle the repetition of shots and automated variation of experiment parameters, the increasingly complex demands of which cannot be rapidly, robustly, and continuously met by human operators. It should automate analysis, leading to the prospect of closed-loop control: the results of analysis influencing subsequent experiment shots. Applications of such closed-loop control include autonomous algorithmic optimization of parameters, and automatic recalibration in response to environmental drifts.

Most existing control systems take one of the two approaches for providing a human interface to programming hardware. One is text-based, in which experiments are written using a general purpose programming language.<sup>6</sup> In the other, experiments are instead described graphically using a custom user interface.<sup>7–11</sup> The text-based approach natively offers the

advantages of a programming language, particularly control-flow tools such as conditional statements, loops, and functions. Its disadvantage is that frequently varied settings and parameters may be hidden in hundreds of lines of code. Conversely, the graphical-user-interface (GUI) approach makes experiment parameters more accessible to the user, but features providing for complex experiment logic must be anticipated and implemented specifically.<sup>10,11</sup>

The two approaches need not be mutually exclusive: by separating experiment parameters from experiment logic, parameters can be manipulated graphically and logic textually.<sup>12,13</sup> We contend that by using a high-level programming language with appropriate hardware abstraction, text-based control can be more comprehensible to a newcomer than an equivalent graphical representation of hardware instructions.

We present the *labscrip* suite which utilizes a hybrid text-and-GUI approach for control and builds on previous work by addressing the need for autonomous control, analysis, and optimization. Hardware control is abstracted, providing an identical software interface to devices of a common type. Graphical interfaces are dynamically generated based on the current hardware set in use. Analysis is an integral part of the control system, with user-written analysis routines run automatically on new data. Finally, analysis results can modify subsequent experiment shots, closing the feedback loop on analysis and control.

## II. AN OVERVIEW OF THE LABSCRIPT SUITE

The *labscrip* suite comprises several programs, each performing one main function; the flow of data between programs is shown in Fig. 1. Each experiment shot is associated with a single file: each program writes to and reads from this file as required before passing it on to the next program. Programs may be run on separate computers, communicating over the network using the ZeroMQ messaging library,<sup>14</sup> exchanging references to the experiment file.

We use the Hierarchical Data Format (HDF version 5)<sup>15</sup> which provides cross-platform storage of large scientific datasets. Exploiting the extensibility of HDF, each file

<sup>a)</sup>P. T. Starkey and C. J. Billington contributed equally to this work.

<sup>b)</sup>Author to whom correspondence should be addressed. Electronic mail: philip.starkey@monash.edu

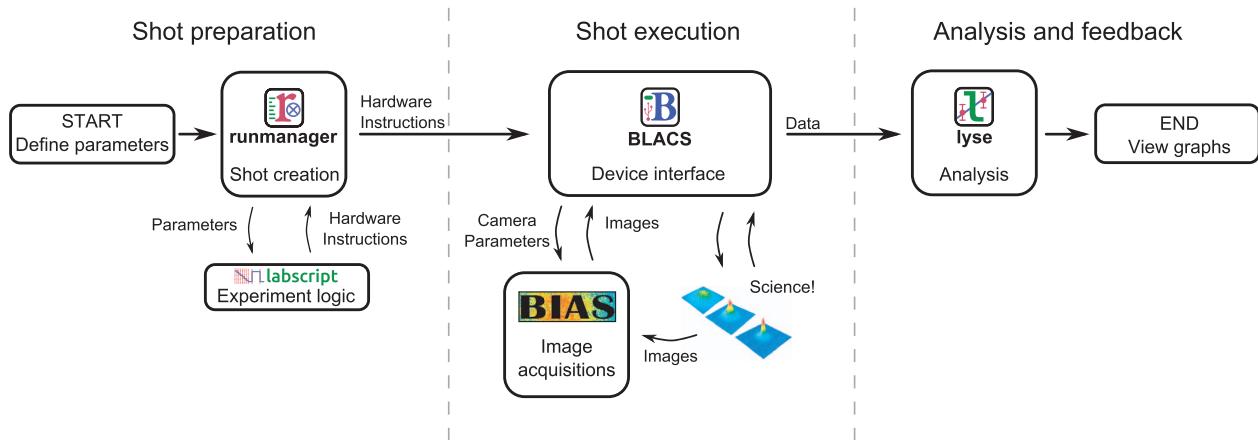


FIG. 1. Each experiment shot comprises three stages: preparation, execution, and analysis. Arrows indicate how the HDF file for an experiment shot passes between software components of the labscrip suite. Only the shot execution stage is coupled to hardware timing, allowing new shots to be created and queued while others are running. Similarly, analysis can be performed on executed shots at any time.

is a complete description of the experiment shot. The HDF file begins life containing only experiment parameters. As it is passed between components of the labscrip suite, the file grows to contain the hardware instructions, acquired data, and analysis results. Metadata is also stored including user-written scripts and version control information. This maintains a comprehensive record of the experiment shot for post-hoc analysis, reproducibility, and publication preparation.

Attempts to standardize laboratory device programming have largely failed, with only a minority of devices conforming to standards such as SCPI (Standard Commands for Programmable Instruments).<sup>16</sup> This calls for abstraction to shield the user from low-level interaction. We have created a software library for Python,<sup>17,18</sup> labscrip (Sec. IV), which provides a common interface for commanding output and measurements from devices. The user writes the experiment logic in Python, and labscrip generates the required hardware instructions, including a clocking signal for timing (Sec. III).

The labscrip suite separates experiment logic (written in Python) from experiment parameters, which are manipulated in a GUI. The GUI, runmanager (Sec. V), creates the HDF file for the experiment shot and stores the parameters within. If a parameter is a list of values, rather than a single value, runmanager creates an HDF file (a prospective shot) for each value. If lists are entered for more than one parameter, runmanager creates a file for each point in the resulting parameter space.

For each shot, labscrip inserts the parameters from the HDF file into the experiment logic, compiles hardware instructions for each device, and writes them to the same file. runmanager sends the compiled HDF files to BLACS (Sec. VI) which places them in a queue. BLACS interfaces with hardware devices either directly, or via secondary control programs such as BIAS (Sec. VII). BLACS programs the hardware and triggers the experiment shot to begin. The experiment then proceeds under hardware-timed control.

Once the experiment shot has finished, acquired data such as voltage time-series and images are added to the HDF file.

BLACS then passes the file to a dedicated analysis system, lyse (Sec. VIII). lyse coordinates the execution of analysis routines, which are Python scripts written by the user. These scripts may analyze individual shots or a sequence of shots as a whole. This facilitates autonomous analysis of results from parameter space scans, as experiment shots are completed.

The labscrip software library can be applied to automatically generate shots based on the results of analysis. We have used this to implement a closed-loop optimization system, mise (Sec. IX).

### III. PSEUDOCLOCK

A typical BEC experiment requires precise timing over a large range of time scales.<sup>1</sup> There are periods during which magnetic fields or laser intensities, for example, may change with sub-microsecond resolution. Conversely, there are periods during which no devices change their output for several seconds, e.g., loading a magneto-optical trap (MOT). To ensure accurate output during the rapid changes, hardware devices must be preloaded with a set of instructions that can be stepped through by a clock once the experiment begins. Stepping through instructions at a constant rate requires repetitive instructions during the more inactive periods. As many devices only support a limited number of instructions, a constant-rate clock limits the maximum sample rate. A common solution<sup>8,9,11,12</sup> is a variable frequency master clock, or *pseudoclock*, which steps through instructions only when a clocked device needs to update an output (see Fig. 2). This removes the need for redundant instructions.

All devices sharing a pseudoclock must have an instruction when any one of their outputs changes value. This can lead to redundant instructions if only some of the devices are changing at a given time. The instruction limitations of one device may then limit another, e.g., some devices hold only a few thousand instructions in their internal memory, whereas others are limited only by the RAM of the host computer refilling their buffers. To solve this problem, we employ

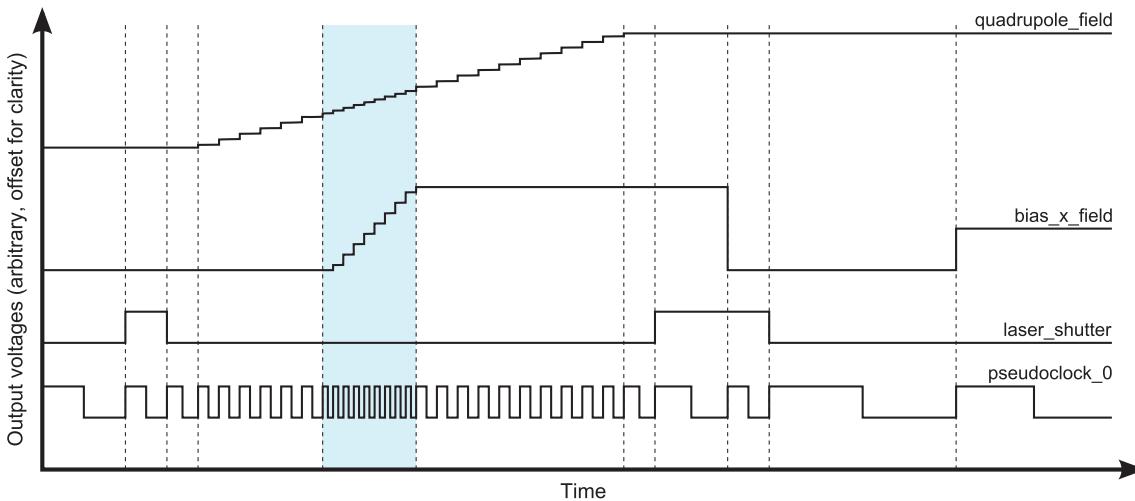


FIG. 2. An example of digital and analog voltage outputs generated by the labscript code in Fig. 3. The pseudoclock (lower trace) ticks when a digital output must change, or at the requested sample rate for time-varying analog outputs (upper two traces). Dashed vertical lines indicate a change in the pseudoclock frequency. When multiple analog outputs are varying at the same time (shaded region), the pseudoclock ticks at the highest of their sampling rates.

multiple pseudoclocks, assigning devices of similar memory limitations to the same clock. At the beginning of a shot, the software starts one pseudoclock (the *master clock*), which then triggers other clocks.

To be a useful pseudoclock, a device must be able to deterministically generate arbitrary digital signals, be hardware triggerable, and hold enough instructions for the required experiment. We currently use two pseudoclocks: the Spin-Core PulseBlaster DDS-II-300-AWG, a commercial device based on a field-programmable gate array (FPGA); and the PineBlaster, a device developed in house based on a microcontroller. Both devices are externally referenced to a stable 10 MHz source.

The PineBlaster is a low-cost device using commodity hardware, based on the Arduino-like Digilent ChipKIT Max32 microcontroller prototyping board.<sup>19</sup> The board is flashed with a program that accepts clock instructions over universal serial bus (USB) and executes them with deterministic timing. It is capable of clocking at up to 10 MHz (100 ns between rising edges) with a resolution of 25 ns. The PineBlaster needs one instruction for each change in clock rate (see Fig. 2) and supports up to 15 000 instructions.

labscript provides support for adding new pseudoclocks. It uses an intermediate format for storing timing instructions; implementing a new pseudoclock entails translating them into the required format for the hardware.

Some experiments require the time between instructions to be determined *during* a shot. This can be achieved by pausing the pseudoclocks until some condition is met. A common example<sup>11–13</sup> is waiting for a sufficient level of fluorescence from a loading MOT. Both the PulseBlaster and the PineBlaster support *wait instructions*, which pause output until resumed by a trigger. These instructions, when used in tandem with devices such as voltage comparators, can command the experiment to wait for events of interest.

#### IV. THE LABSCRIPT LIBRARY

We have created a Python software library, `labscript`, for defining experiment logic. `labscript` provides *hardware abstraction*, a common interface to control heterogeneous hardware. For example, the `DigitalOut` class provides `go_high(t)` and `go_low(t)` functions to set the state of a digital output at time  $t$ . The user calls these functions without regard to the underlying device, its method of programming, or the state of other digital outputs connected to the same device. Based on an experiment script containing such function calls, `labscript` automatically generates instructions for output and measurement devices as well as pseudoclocks. The automatic generation of pseudoclock instructions saves the user from dividing overlapping function ramps into segments (Fig. 2), or manually interpolating output values when a new time point is created on another channel.

An experiment script consists of two parts: a *connection table* (Fig. 3(a)), and code defining the logic of the experiment (Fig. 3(b)). The connection table provides a complete description of devices that are required for the experiment and how they are connected. `labscript` creates a set of Python objects based on the connection table, each with associated functions for commanding output or measurement from devices. The logic of the experiment is then defined by calling these functions with parameters such as time and output value.

As the experiment script is executable Python code, the user has full access to standard Python control flow tools, as well as standard and third party Python libraries. Using a high level language such as Python spares the user from low-level tasks such as memory management.<sup>5</sup> User-created functions can be stored in modules and imported into other experiment scripts. This allows complex experiments to be constructed from simple components, while maintaining comprehensibility, resulting in a gentler learning curve for new students. For example, one might define a `make_BEC()` function which

```
(a) # Device definitions
PulseBlaster(name='pseudoclock_0', board_number=0)
NI_PCIE_6363(name='ni_card_0', parent_device=pseudoclock_0, clock_type='fast clock',
    MAX_name='ni_pcie_6363_0', clock_terminal='/ni_pcie_6363_0/PFI0')

# Channel definitions
Shutter (name='laser_shutter', parent_device=ni_card_0, connection='port0/line13')
AnalogOut(name='quadrupole_field', parent_device=ni_card_0, connection='ao0')
AnalogOut(name='bias_x_field', parent_device=ni_card_0, connection='ao1')

(b) # Experiment logic
start()
t = 0

# first laser pulse at t = 1 second
t += 1; laser_shutter.open(t)
t += 0.5; laser_shutter.close(t)
t += 0.4;

t += quadrupole_field.ramp(t, duration=5, initial=0, final=3, samplerate=4) # samplerate in Hz
# start ramping the bias field 3 seconds before the quadrupole ramp ends
bias_x_field.ramp(t-3, duration=1, initial=0, final=2.731, samplerate=8)
# t is now 6.9s, the end of the quadrupole field ramp

# second laser pulse
t += 0.4; laser_shutter.open(t)
t += 1; bias_x_field.constant(t, value=0.0)
t += 0.5; laser_shutter.close(t)
t += 2

# hold bias field at bias_x_final_field for 2 seconds before finishing shot
bias_x_field.constant(t, value=bias_x_final_field)
t += 2
stop(t)
```

FIG. 3. An example `labscrip` file. The connection table (a) defines a pseudoclock and a multifunction DAC object and configures three output channels. This is followed by the experiment logic (b) which commands output from these channels by name at times specified by the variable `t`. The experiment logic refers to the parameter `bias_x_final_field` which is set in `runmanager` (Sec. V).

contains the logic to form a Bose–Einstein condensate. While students might not fully understand the experiment logic to create a BEC, they can focus on subsequent experiment logic after a BEC is made. We have found that text based experiment scripts benefit not just from code re-use but also version control, bug tracking, and comparison of incremental changes (diffs).

When the experiment script is run and a timing sequence created, the `labscrip` functions take into account hardware limitations and provide error messages if these are exceeded. If no errors are found, the hardware instruction set for all devices in the connection table is written to the HDF file.

While a text-based definition of experiment logic gives a broad overview of the timing sequence, it is not ideal for visualizing the device outputs to ensure the experiment logic is as intended. The hardware instructions generated by running experiment scripts are difficult to interpret (indeed, `labscrip` was created to mitigate this very problem). Our program (`runviewer`) produces plots (similar to Fig. 2) of the hardware instructions generated by `labscrip`, allowing quick diagnosis of the timing sequence before reaching for the oscilloscope.

## V. SETTING PARAMETERS—RUNMANAGER

Repeating experiments while varying parameters is a fundamental part of the scientific method. Anyone who has performed a quantum science experiment will be familiar with

tweaking parameters to find a resonance, calibrating a measurement, or acquiring a large amount of scientific data prior to publication. The logic of the experiment does not change every time a parameter is adjusted, and it is cumbersome to edit numbers in a text file for each modification.

To ameliorate this, `labscrip` experiments can take a series of parameters as input. The names and values of these parameters are defined in the graphical interface of `runmanager` (Fig. 4). The values can be any valid Python expression (such as `0.74`, `1E-3`, `sin(pi/2)`, or `True`) and can refer to each other. We call these parameters *globals* because they are available as global variables in experiment scripts, where they are simply referred to by name. For example, these globals might be used to specify the duration of a  $\pi$ -pulse, the delay between releasing atoms from a trap and imaging them, or the field strengths of bias magnetic coils. This provides a clean separation between code, which defines the nature of the experiment (such as creating a BEC with a vortex or performing a matter-wave mixing experiment), and parameters that modify individual shots.

The user may enter a list of values for a global, such as `[1, 2, 3]`, or `linspace(0, 10, 100)`. In this case `runmanager` produces a corresponding list of experiment shots: one for each value. If multiple globals are entered as lists, `runmanager` performs a Cartesian product, creating one shot for each point in the resulting parameter space. Two or more lists can be *zipped*, in which case `runmanager` iterates over these lists in lock-step when producing shots.

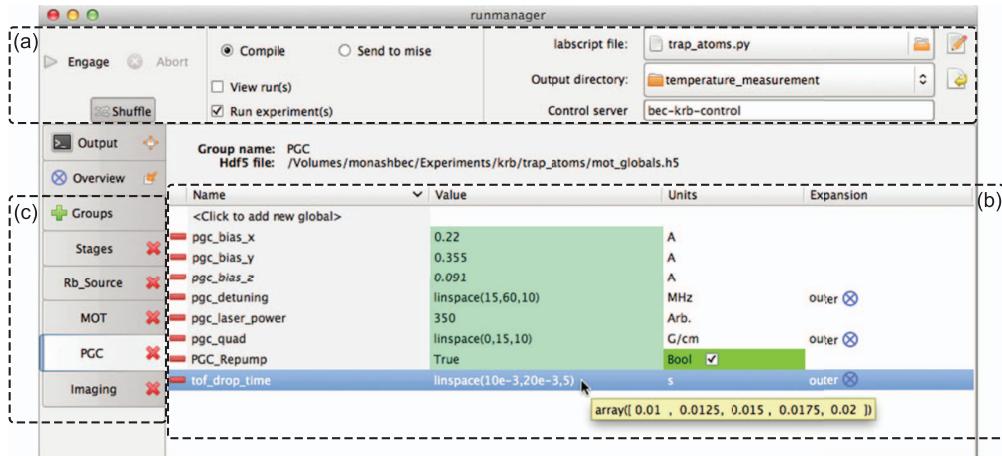


FIG. 4. The `runmanager` interface for configuring experiment parameters. (a) The experiment logic is specified by the `labscript file` (here `trap_atoms.py`). HDF files for experiment shots created by `runmanager` are saved in the `Output directory`. (b) The value of experiment parameters (“globals”) are specified by Python expressions and may have units. These can be single values (i.e., 350 or `True`), lists, or expressions creating lists (as shown for the globals `pgc_detuning`, `pgc_quad`, and `tof_drop_time`). A tooltip shows the evaluation of the global. The “Expansion” column specifies how lists of values are combined to construct a parameter space. (c) Globals can be separated into groups for convenience.

Specifying globals as lists makes it possible to explore complicated parameter spaces containing hundreds or thousands of shots. For example, one might investigate how the temperature of laser cooled atoms varies with laser detuning and magnetic field gradient. Taking the Cartesian product of ten field strengths and ten detunings results in a parameter space of one hundred points. Thermometry at each point in this parameter space commonly requires multiple shots to characterize the expansion rate of the atom cloud. A five-shot temperature measurement brings the number of shots to five hundred. Producing these shots amounts to entering three lists in `runmanager` and clicking on the “Engage” button, as shown in Fig. 4. `runmanager` then creates five hundred HDF files containing the globals for each shot. The experiment script is run for each shot, storing hardware instructions in each file.<sup>20</sup> The HDF files are then submitted to BLACS for execution.

## VI. EXPERIMENT EXECUTION—BLACS

BLACS coordinates input and output through hardware devices. These devices can be local, and thus under the direct control of BLACS, or connected to a different computer as part of a secondary control program such as BIAS (Sec. VII). BLACS provides both manual control of devices (through a GUI) and buffered execution of experiment shots.

The GUI for manual control is dynamically generated from a *lab connection table* that describes the current configuration of all connected devices. Each device is allocated a tab in the interface, containing controls for commanding output when in manual control mode (Fig. 5).

Upon submission to BLACS, HDF files containing hardware instructions are checked for validity and placed in a queue. The queue can be reordered, paused, or put on repeat. The validity check compares the connection table of each shot to the lab connection table, rejecting those with incompatible

hardware. This prevents unintended device output that would produce nonsensical results and possibly damage equipment.

BLACS takes the first experiment in the queue, coordinates hardware programming, and sends a start trigger to the master pseudoclock. The experiment then proceeds under hardware timing. At the end of a shot, BLACS coordinates saving data acquired by devices to the HDF file, and returns to manual control mode. Each GUI control is updated to the final values of the shot, maintaining output continuity.

Laboratories are a hostile environment for hardware interface libraries. Power cycling of devices and unplugging of cables are common occurrences. A student tripping over a USB cable (health and safety implications notwithstanding) might be expected to cause an experiment to fail, however the control system ought to recover gracefully when it is plugged back in. Similarly, bugs in closed source drivers and libraries are points of failure outside of a users control.

To make our system robust against such hardware and software failures, BLACS implements a multiprocess architecture similar to the sandboxed tabs of the Google Chrome web browser.<sup>21</sup> For each device in BLACS, a *worker process* is spawned, which communicates with the hardware device. This makes BLACS robust against crashes: if one device has a problem it will not affect others. If a hardware device becomes unresponsive, or the device driver encounters a serious error, its isolation in a separate process prevents the GUI and other devices from suffering the same fate.

Should a worker process crash, the user is presented with the option of restarting the process, which will reload any device libraries it uses. It is worth noting that systems implemented in LabVIEW cannot force libraries to reload, so errors leading to an undefined state would only be remedied by restarting the entire control system.

The initialization of hardware in preparation for a shot is an important part of an experiment, and can significantly contribute to the experiment cycle time. The multiprocess

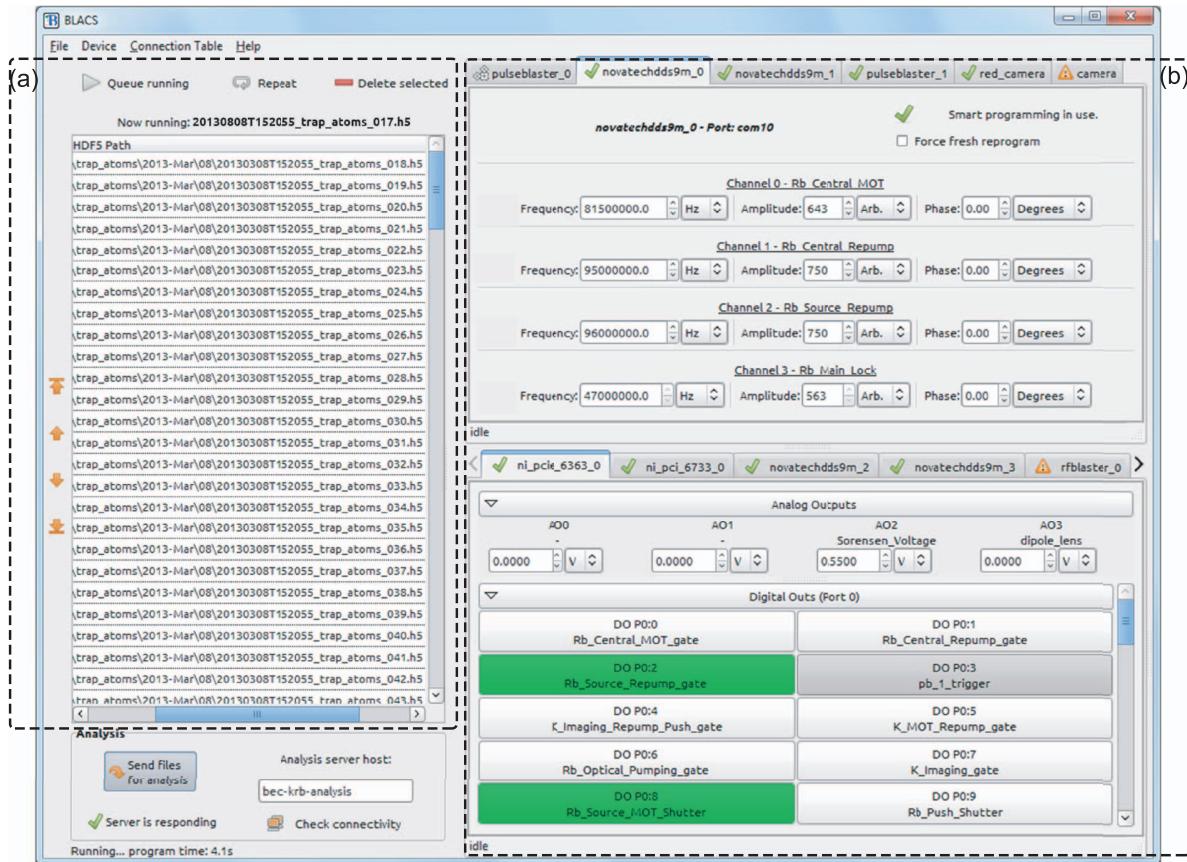


FIG. 5. The BLACS interface for controlling hardware. (a) The queue of shots submitted via `runmanager.r`. (b) The manual control interface. Each tab controls one device. Controls for all outputs are automatically generated and are named based on the BLACS connection table.

architecture naturally provides for simultaneous programming of hardware devices, resulting in an increased experiment duty cycle. We have implemented a *smart programming* feature on many of our devices, further decreasing programming time, reprogramming them only if their instructions have changed since the previous shot (on a per-instruction basis when possible). Devices with large buffers and slow communication (such as the Novatech DDS9m rf synthesizer) benefit greatly from this technique.

## VII. IMAGE ACQUISITION—BIAS

Using secondary control programs to communicate with specific devices is desirable when software to do so exists and has been debugged, particularly software written in another programming language. BLACS integrates such programs into the control flow by sending them HDF files containing hardware instructions to program devices for execution upon a hardware trigger. BLACS notifies secondary control programs that the shot has completed, at which point they write any acquired data to the HDF file.

Our camera control and image acquisition system, BIAS, is one such program. BIAS is a LabVIEW application that operates scientific cameras, captures image sequences, and performs image processing tasks such as background subtraction, saturation correction, optical depth calculation, and simple 2D fitting.

Multiple instances of BIAS can be run simultaneously to control multiple cameras in one experiment. BIAS can also run as a stand-alone program for quick visualization of previously captured data or acquire images manually. Hardware communication in BIAS is abstracted through LabVIEW's object hierarchy, allowing a camera class to be written for any vendor library.

LabVIEW provides convenient components for creating graphical interfaces, and BIAS displays raw and computed images as they become available (Fig. 6). Fit results such as atom cloud shape and atom number are prominently displayed to detect and diagnose problems as they occur. The camera acquisition area and regions of interest used to inform fits can be interactively adjusted, without needing to interrupt or recreate a currently running sequence of shots. Multiple regions of interest can be selected and their coordinates saved to the HDF file, enabling further analysis.

## VIII. ANALYSIS—LYSE

Analysis is a critical part of an autonomous control system. Automated analysis—performed immediately after every shot—is often restricted to routines that change infrequently and are applied uniformly once per shot. Ideally analysis should be flexible as well as autonomous; these can be conflicting goals without a unifying analysis framework.

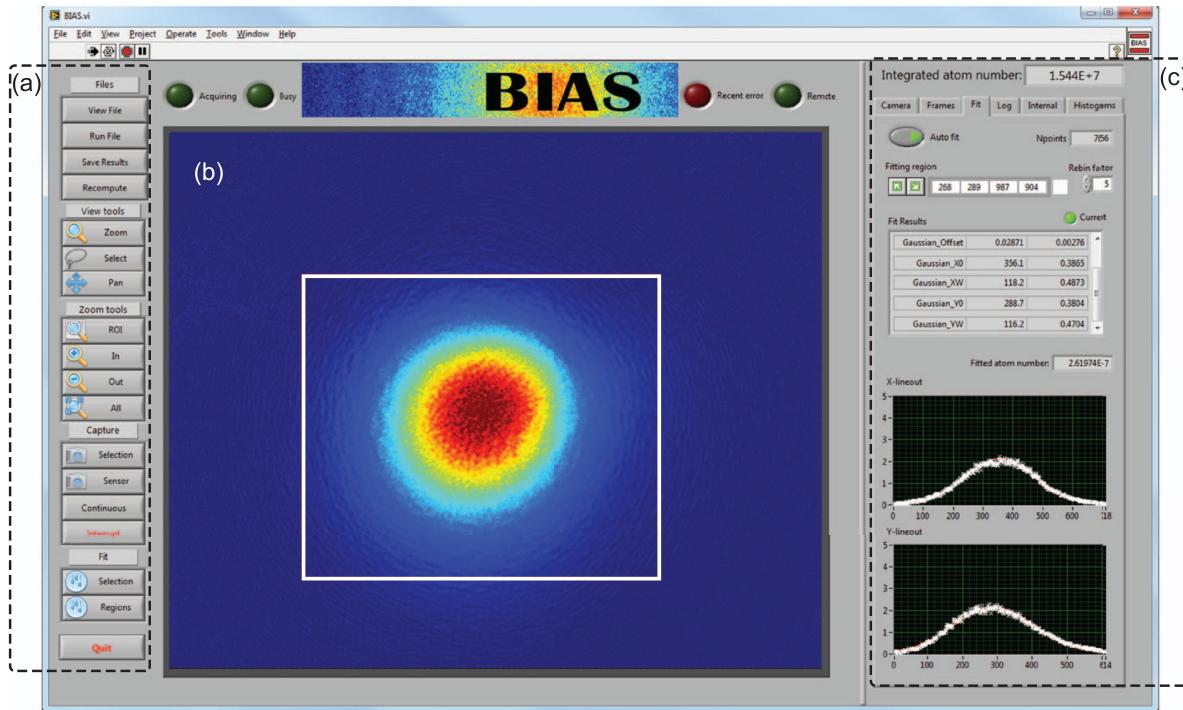


FIG. 6. The BIAS interface displaying a laser cooled atom cloud. (a) Manual controls for loading and capturing images, selecting regions of interest and zooming. (b) Computed optical depth (OD) image of the atoms, with a region of interest (white) selected for fitting. Multiple regions of interest may be selected for multi-component atom clouds. (c) Atom number and cloud size are displayed for immediate feedback.

Our analysis system `lyse` accommodates collective analysis of a group of shots and trivial re-analysis upon changing or adding routines.

`lyse` is a scheduler for user-written analysis routines, which are ordinary Python scripts. It provides functions for extracting the experiment data and metadata from the HDF files and saving analysis results to these files. Multiple analysis routines added to `lyse` execute one after the other when a new HDF file is received over the network, or on command through the GUI. Plots produced by the user's code are updated following every shot as new data comes in from the experiment.

There are two types of routine that `lyse` can run: single-shot, which are run on every shot, and multi-shot, which analyze a group of shots together. Analysis of the thermometry example in Sec. V is shown in Fig. 7. A single-shot routine computes the size of an atom cloud after a fixed expansion time, and a multi-shot routine uses these results to determine the expansion rate and thus the temperature. The multi-shot routine then plots this temperature as a function of laser detuning and magnetic field strength.

Splitting, sorting, plotting, and exploring large multidimensional datasets are cumbersome when directly accessing a set of files. In addition to direct access to the HDF files, `lyse` provides a tabular data structure—a `pandas`<sup>22</sup> DataFrame—for multi-shot routines, containing all globals as set by `run-manager`, and all single-shot analysis results. With `pandas`<sup>24</sup> and the standard Python scientific stack of `numpy`,<sup>23</sup> `scipy`,<sup>24</sup> and `matplotlib`,<sup>25</sup> `lyse` provides a powerful environment for analysis.<sup>26</sup>

Analysis routines can be run independently of `lyse` if desired. This allows the same framework and analysis code to be used for publication preparation.

## IX. OPTIMIZATION—MISE

Marrying powerful Python tools to shot-based analysis permits extensibility of the control system, such as closed loop optimization of measured quantities. One often performs parameter space scans for optimization, requiring many shots. This may be tuning a parameter of an apparatus to enhance its performance, finding a resonance of some transition, or some other feature of interest. The quantity being optimized is often the result of some analysis, e.g., the temperature of ultracold atoms (mentioned in Secs. V and VIII). We have created `mise`, a program that performs automatic optimization of analysis results using a genetic algorithm.<sup>27</sup> A user specifies one or more parameters to optimize against a predefined figure of merit. Genetic algorithms are resistant to noise, making them particularly useful for optimizing experimental results.

The data flow of the optimization process follows Fig. 8, modifying that shown in Fig. 1. The user specifies in `run-manager` one or more parameters to optimize, with upper and lower limits for each. An analysis routine in `lyse` reports optimality to `mise`, which creates shots with modified parameters and submits them to BLACS.

For each parameter being optimized the user also specifies a *mutation rate*. This determines how much the parameter is varied per generation of the genetic algorithm:

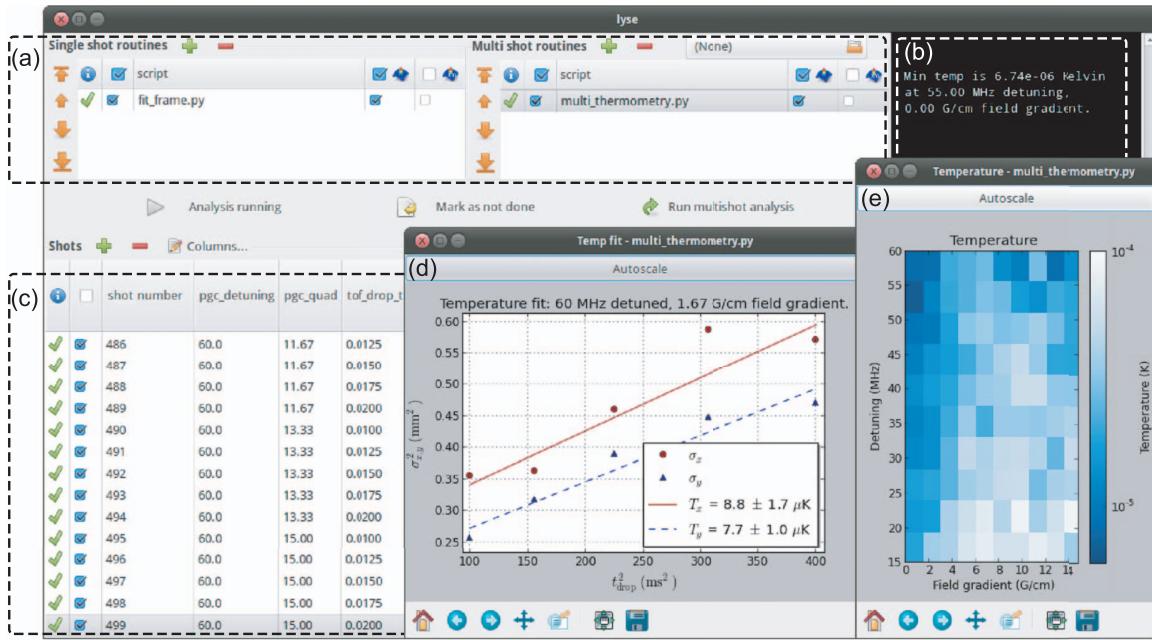


FIG. 7. The lyse interface. (a) Routines can be selected to analyze single or multiple shots. (b) Terminal output from the analysis routines in (a). (c) Table of shots; columns show globals and analysis results. A small subset of columns is displayed here. (d) A fit yielding the temperature of laser cooled atoms prepared at a particular field gradient and detuning. (e) The results of the analysis in (d) repeated at each point in the parameter space.

the larger the mutation rate, the faster mise will move towards the optimum. However, a large mutation rate limits the precision to which the optimal parameters can be determined.

With this specification of parameters, mise creates a population of *individuals*. Each individual comprises values from one point in the optimization parameter space, initially chosen at random. An individual may be a single experiment shot, or—when optimizing the result of a multi-shot analysis—a sequence of shots. Once the shots comprising an individual have executed, the user's analysis routine computes a *fitness*, which may be derived from any measured quantity. mise uses the reported fitness in the genetic algorithm to optimize the specified parameters. The genetic algorithm used by mise<sup>28</sup> is a variation on pointed directed mutation,<sup>29</sup> in

which mutations are biased in directions previously shown to be successful.

The user can specify when to stop the optimization, either by manual intervention or by a convergence condition written into their analysis script. They may also “guide” the evolution by adding and deleting individuals from the gene pool at any time.

An example of automated optimization using mise is shown in Fig. 9. By preferentially exploring the more interesting regions of parameter space, autonomous optimization allows optima to be found in fewer shots.

mise uses the labscript software library to create HDF shot files and submit them to BLACS. Additional user-written components could similarly submit shots to BLACS if more complex programmatic generation of shots is required.

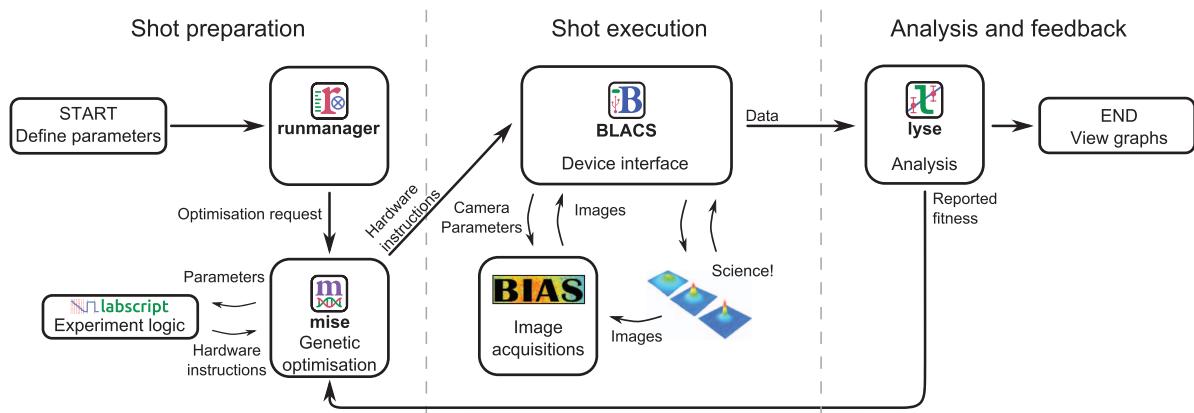


FIG. 8. The data flow for closed loop optimization. In contrast to Fig. 1, analysis results are used to determine future shots automatically. The optimizer mise varies parameters, directly calling labscript to compile new experiment shots. Parameters to be optimized are selected by the user in runmanager. lyse reports fitness to mise which is used to create the next generation of shots.

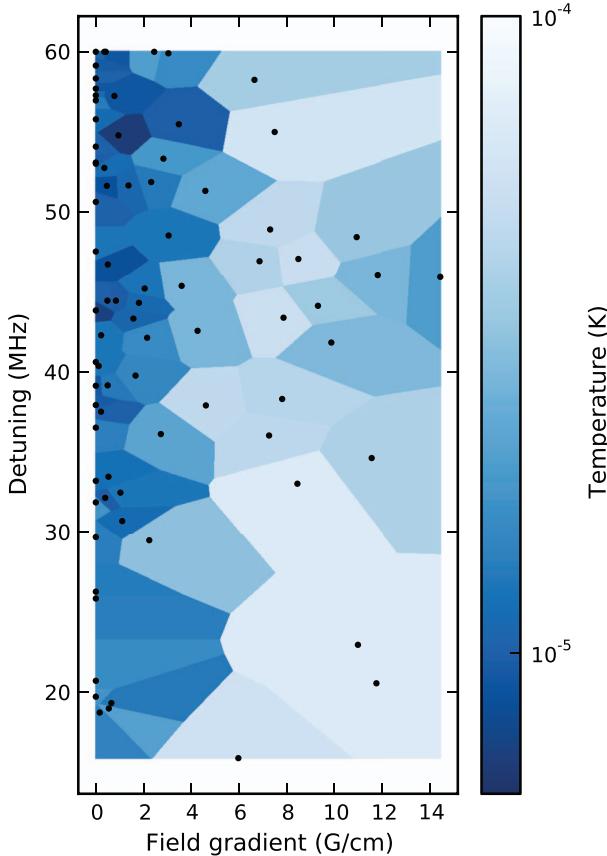


FIG. 9. A proof-of-principle optimization using mise. mise scanned the parameter space described in Sec. V, searching for the coldest point. Each black point represents a temperature measurement at a specific field gradient and detuning, with the surrounding shading indicating the temperature. Eighty points were taken, corresponding to 400 shots. The colder region of parameter space is sampled more densely than the uniformly-sampled scan, shown in Fig. 7(e), with 500 shots.

## X. PORTABILITY AND EXTENSIBILITY

Our software runs on Windows, Linux, and OS X, although BLACS and BIAS compatibility is subject to the availability of appropriate hardware drivers. If particular devices must be interfaced with a specific computer, operating system, or programming language, a secondary control program (such as BIAS, Sec. VII) can be used. The components of the labsuite suite communicate with each other via data in HDF files, and over the network with ZeroMQ sockets. The widespread support of these technologies across many platforms<sup>30</sup> ensures users are not bound to any one operating system or programming language. The modular nature of our system allows users to replace or supplement any of our programs in their choice of language.

The programs themselves are also written with extensibility in mind. Adding new hardware support to the labsuite suite entails writing a new device class for labsuite, and a GUI tab for BLACS,<sup>31</sup> or a camera class for BIAS. Adding analysis routines to lyse amounts to writing a Python script to process experiment data. Existing library functions and base classes assist such development. The suite has already proved useful in a setting distinct from quantum science ex-

periments, automating the prototyping of an objective lens, in which the image of a pinhole was acquired and analyzed at 3600 points in a plane to determine the field of view.<sup>32</sup>

The labsuite suite is open-source and freely available online.<sup>33</sup> We encourage readers to contact us if they are interested in implementing the suite in their laboratory.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to thank the current users of our system, who were not part of the development team, L. Bennie, M. Egorov, and A. Wood for their input into making this a better system. This work was supported by Australian Research Council Grant Nos. DP1094399 and DP1096830.

<sup>1</sup>See, e.g., M. Weidemüller and C. Zimmermann, *Cold Atoms and Molecules* (Wiley, 2009), and references within.

<sup>2</sup>See, e.g., N. Robins, P. Altin, J. Debs, and J. Close, “Atom lasers: Production, properties and prospects for precision inertial measurement,” *Phys. Rep.* **529**, 265 (2013); A. D. Cronin, J. Schmiedmayer, and D. E. Pritchard, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **81**, 1051 (2009), and references within.

<sup>3</sup>See, e.g., A. Negretti, P. Treutlein, and T. Calarco, *Quantum Inf. Process.* **10**, 721 (2011); T. D. Ladd, F. Jelezko, R. Laflamme, Y. Nakamura, C. Monroe, and J. L. O’Brien, *Nature (London)* **464**, 45 (2010), and references within.

<sup>4</sup>See, e.g., I. Bloch, J. Dalibard, and S. Nascimbène, *Nat. Phys.* **8**, 267 (2012); R. Blatt and C. F. Roos, *ibid.* **8**, 277 (2012), and references within.

<sup>5</sup>G. Varoquaux, *Comput. Sci. Eng.* **10**, 55 (2008).

<sup>6</sup>P. E. Gaskell, J. J. Thorn, S. Alba, and D. A. Steck, *Rev. Sci. Instrum.* **80**, 115103 (2009).

<sup>7</sup>R. P. Anderson, Ph.D. thesis, Swinburne University of Technology, 2010.

<sup>8</sup>M. Beeler, Ph.D. thesis, University of Maryland, 2011.

<sup>9</sup>P. A. Altin, Ph.D. thesis, Australian National University, 2012.

<sup>10</sup>T. Stöferle, Ph.D. thesis, Swiss Federal Institute of Technology, 2005.

<sup>11</sup>A. Keshet and W. Ketterle, *Rev. Sci. Instrum.* **84**, 015105 (2013).

<sup>12</sup>S. F. Owen and D. S. Hall, *Rev. Sci. Instrum.* **75**, 259 (2004).

<sup>13</sup>T. Meyrath and F. Schreck, “A laboratory control system for cold atom experiments,” see <http://www.strontiumbec.com/indexControl.html> (2012).

<sup>14</sup>P. Hintjens, *Code Connected Volume 1: Learning ZeroMQ* (CreateSpace Independent Publishing Platform, 2013); see also “ØMQ: the intelligent transport layer,” <http://www.zeromq.org/>.

<sup>15</sup>The HDF Group. Hierarchical data format version 5, 2000-2010. <http://www.hdfgroup.org/HDF5>.

<sup>16</sup>“IEEE Standard Codes, Formats, Protocols, and Common Commands for Use With IEEE Std 488.1-1987, IEEE Standard Digital Interface for Programmable Instrumentation,” IEEE Std 488.2-1992.

<sup>17</sup>G. van Rossum *et al.*, “Python programming language v2.7,” see <http://docs.python.org/2.7/> (2010).

<sup>18</sup>J. M. Hughes, *Real World Instrumentation with Python: Automated Data Acquisition and Control Systems* (O’Reilly Media, Inc., 2010).

<sup>19</sup>The source code for turning a ChipKIT Max32 into a PineBlaster is available at <http://hardware.labsuitesuite.org/>.

<sup>20</sup>In our lab, a typical hardware set for running this experiment would be a SpinCore PulseBlaster DDS-II-300-AWG as a pseudoclock, along with a Novatech DDS9m, National Instruments PCIe6363 and PCI6733 boards and a Photonfocus MV1-D1312(I) camera.

<sup>21</sup>A. Barth, C. Jackson, C. Reis, and The Google Chrome Team, “The security architecture of the chromium browser,” Technical Report, Stanford Security Laboratory, 2008, available at <http://seclab.stanford.edu/websec/chromium>. See <http://youtu.be/29e0CtgXZSI> for more information.

<sup>22</sup>W. McKinney, “pandas: a Python data analysis library,” see <http://pandas.pydata.org/>.

<sup>23</sup>T. Oliphant, “NumPy: numerical Python,” see <http://www.numpy.org/>.

<sup>24</sup>E. Jones, T. Oliphant, P. Peterson *et al.*, “SciPy: open source scientific tools for Python,” see <http://www.scipy.org/> (2001).

<sup>25</sup>J. Hunter, *Comput. Sci. Eng.* **9**, 90 (2007); see also “matplotlib: Python plotting,” <http://matplotlib.org/>.

<sup>26</sup>W. McKinney, *Python for Data Analysis* (O’Reilly Media, Inc., 2012).

<sup>27</sup>T. Bäck and H.-P. Schwefel, *Evol. Comput.* **1**, 1–23 (1993).

<sup>28</sup>See supplementary material at <http://dx.doi.org/10.1063/1.4817213> for implementation details of the genetic algorithm used by `mise`.

<sup>29</sup>A. Berry and P. Vamplew, “PoD Can Mutate: A Simple Dynamic Directed Mutation Approach for Genetic Algorithms,” in *AISAT2004: International Conference on Artificial Intelligence in Science and Technology*, 21–25 November 2004, Hobart, Tasmania, Australia.

<sup>30</sup>HDF bindings include C/C++, MATLAB, Python, LabVIEW and Mathematica. ZeroMQ support includes C/C++, Python, LabVIEW, Java and many more. See [http://www.hdfgroup.org/products/hdf5\\_tools/](http://www.hdfgroup.org/products/hdf5_tools/) and [http://www.zeromq.org/bindings:\\_start/](http://www.zeromq.org/bindings:_start/) for more complete lists.

<sup>31</sup>BLACS communicates with hardware devices through user-written interface code. Devices communicating over standard buses (RS232, USB, Ethernet) are easily interfaced using standard Python libraries for these buses. Devices with proprietary interfaces can be programmed by calls to vendor-supplied libraries through Python’s sophisticated foreign-function interface.

<sup>32</sup>L. M. Bennie, P. T. Starkey, M. Jasperse, C. J. Billington, R. P. Anderson, and L. D. Turner, *Opt. Express* **21**, 9011 (2013).

<sup>33</sup>“The labscript suite: an open source experiment control and analysis system,” see <http://labscriptsuite.org/>.

This page intentionally left blank

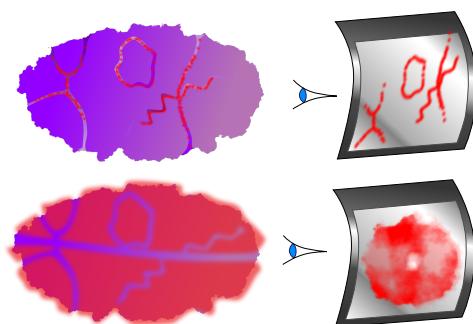
## Particle velocimetry of vortices in Bose–Einstein condensates

[START COPIED FROM INTRO]

This project aims to experimentally realise an imaging method for the real time tracking of quantum vortices in a turbulent  $^{41}\text{K}$  condensate. This will involve ultracold  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  tracer particles which will become bound to vortex lines in the condensate, and which will be imaged repeatedly to track the vortex lines as they move. The imaging of tracer particles to track vortex motion has already proved successful in superfluid helium [?, ?, ?], and the method of laser cooling and imaging atoms in high resolution with the same laser light has also been successful in cold atom systems [?]. We have tested our method *in-silico* [?] and from this, expect it to work under a number of assumptions.

If successful, this method will overcome several existing difficulties that other imaging methods face. Since vortices have previously been imaged by resonant absorption imaging of the condensate itself, they are usually viewed with the vortex line perpendicular to the image plane. If not viewed end on, the rest of the cloud obscures the low density of atoms due to the core. One solution to this problem is to slice the condensate into layers, and image them separately [?].

Our method should be able to image vortex lines side-on without destroying the condensate, since the atoms being imaged reside in the vortex core itself rather than the



**Figure 6.1:** Fluorescence imaging of the condensate itself (bottom) makes it difficult to resolve vortices unless they are viewed end-on. The vortex cores are usually smaller than the imaging light's wavelength, and are thus also difficult to resolve unless the cloud is allowed to expand. Imaging tracer particles instead resolves both these problems.

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

bulk of the condensate. This should make it possible to image the time evolution of Kelvin waves [?], vortex reconnections [?], and vortex rings [?].

This *in-situ* imaging of vortex dynamics will allow more types of vortex motion to be imaged. Dynamics of BECs are usually imaged with a shot-by-shot method, in which repeated experiments with identical initial conditions are imaged destructively after being allowed to evolve for different amounts of time. Whilst this works for many types of dynamics, it fails for experiments that are more sensitive to initial conditions and noise (quantum or otherwise), such as turbulent flow. This includes phenomena which cannot be created reliably in the same initial state, even though the evolution thereafter would be consistent from one experimental run to the next. One such phenomenon is the spontaneous generation of vortices after evaporative cooling [?].

*In-situ* imaging of vortex motion has been achieved previously [?], by ejecting a fraction of the atoms from the condensate periodically and imaging them. This process is limited by depletion of the condensate, and was also used only to image vortices end-on. The fraction of the condensate being imaged was also allowed to freely expand before being imaged, since vortex cores are otherwise unable to be resolved by the wavelength of light used. Our method requires neither free expansion or depletion of the condensate.

### 6.0.1 Motivation: Turbulence

It is commonly said that turbulence is one of the greatest unsolved problems of classical physics. But in what sense is it an unsolved problem? Its not a problem at all if your aim is reductionism—the Navier–Stokes equation perfectly describes the evolution of a Newtonian fluid within its domain of validity, and the process of deriving it from the underlying motion of classical particles is completely understood. It's turtles all the way down [?, p 1]; what more could we ask for?

The best comparison to make at this point, I think, is to the field of thermodynamics, for precisely the same statement can be made about the energy content and exchange between systems of particles. Thermodynamics has revealed that despite the chaotic motion of individual particles in an ensemble, definite statements can still be made about the behaviour of the system as a whole, *without having to consider the dynamics of the constituent components in detail*.

This is the kind of solution people have in mind when they speak of ‘solving’ the problem of turbulence. Laws describing the average properties of a fluid without reference to its precise flow field would not simply be interesting as describing turbulence as an emergent phenomenon, but would aid practical computations immensely, which are presently quite difficult. The flow of a turbulent fluid contains detail on such a wide range of length scales that any finite-element analysis of a system such as say, an aeroplane wing, requires a very high resolution in order to be accurate. Following an estimate of computing power required to simulate a turbulent system down to its smallest length scales, Stanley Corrsin quipped [?]:

The foregoing estimate is enough to suggest the use of analog instead of digital computation; in particular, how about an analog consisting of a tank of water?

But are we asking for too much? Perhaps the statistical properties of a turbulent fluid fundamentally cannot be decoupled from the finer details. If so, then it is wishful thinking to hope that we might do so.

However there is reason to believe that this is not the case. There are several tantalising results that hint at universal properties that all turbulent flows share, and there is the simple empirical observation that the average flow of turbulent fluids at large scales is reproducible from one experimental run to the next [?, pp 13, 86].

One of these universal results is Kolmogorov's theory of the statistics of small eddies [?, ?]. Another is the fact that the rate of energy dissipation via the action of viscosity at small scales is *independent of the viscosity itself* [?, p 77].

Then there is the Richardson energy cascade [?], in which energy is continually transferred from larger scales to smaller scales. With dissipation at the smallest scales and addition at larger scales, this allows for the existence of 'steady state' turbulence.

So far I haven't mentioned superfluids at all, though a superfluid is what this project is studying. There are several interesting aspects of superfluid turbulence that differ from classical turbulence. The most obvious is the absence of viscosity; another major difference is the quantisation of vortex lines. On scales much larger than the vortex spacing, superfluid turbulence is expected to closely resemble classical turbulence<sup>1</sup> [?]. But at smaller scales the energy dissipation mechanism is different, instead involving the production of sound waves via vortex interactions [?, ?].

In certain 2D geometries, an *inverse cascade* [?, ?] is predicted to take place in superfluids, whereby energy moves not from large scales to small, but from small to large, clustering quantised vortices of the same circulation direction together. This has not as of yet been observed. [TODO IT HAS BEEN SIMULATED CITE TAPIO ETC]

To emphasise the role of vortices in turbulence in general, I will finally give a definition of turbulence, taken from [?, p 53]:

Incompressible hydrodynamic turbulence is a spatially complex distribution of vorticity which advects itself in a chaotic manner in accordance with [the vorticity equation<sup>2</sup>]. The vorticity field is random in both space and time, and exhibits a wide and continuous distribution of length and time scales.

When vorticity exists only in infinitely narrow lines, as it does in superfluid, the vorticity equation mentioned in the above definition reduces to a Biot–Savart type law which can be used to compute the motion of vortices without having to compute the entire flow field.

This is why we are interested in the study of the dynamics of quantised vortices. Unlike in classical fluids, the vortices in superfluids have a definite position and size; there is either a vortex or there is not. This may make it simpler to describe the motion of vortices statistically.

So far experimental studies of superfluid turbulence have mainly been in the context of liquid helium [?]; we hope to augment the existing experimental data with that obtained from BEC. The high degree of control afforded over systems of cold atoms allows the superfluid's properties to be tweaked in several ways, creating a larger parameter space in which to study turbulence than that afforded by liquid helium.

[END COPIED FROM INTRO]

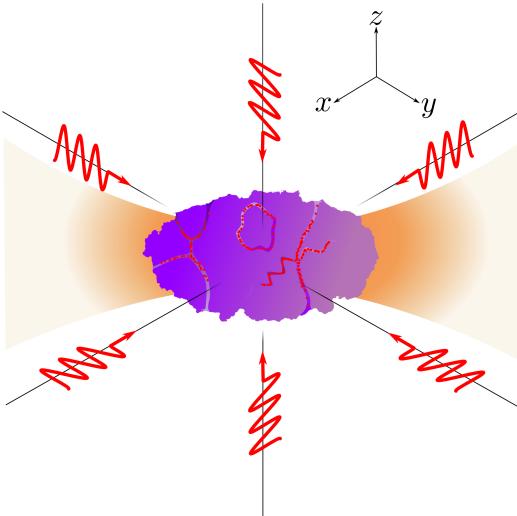
- Semiclassical simulations: Provide details of how the simulations were performed and the results they gave. Describe method of computing collisions between the classically modelled particles and the condensate, and how the fluorescence imaging was simulated. Present results and discuss experimental feasibility.
- Sisyphus cooling in a magnetic field Describe the scheme for Sisyphus cooling I developed, and show 1D simulation results.

### 6.0.2 Method

The main experimental aim of this project is the use of tracer particles to track vortex cores in a BEC in real time. The tracer particles will be  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  atoms and the BEC made of  $^{41}\text{K}$ . This choice is due to the strong interspecies repulsion between these atoms, which gives rise to the trapping of atoms in the vortex cores. In the limit of low densities

<sup>1</sup>At large scales in classical fluids, velocity gradients are small and hence viscosity can be neglected anyway.

<sup>2</sup>Which is a transformation of the Navier–Stokes equation for an incompressible fluid into a form in which the vorticity field is center-stage.



**Figure 6.2:** The simplest scheme for cooling and imaging the tracer particles with the same light is polarisation gradient cooling, involving six slightly off resonant beams (red), with each counterpropagating pair having opposite linear polarisations. This will scatter some light off the tracer atoms, as well as cool them to sub-Doppler temperatures. If the cooling is sufficient, it should encourage the atoms into the vortex cores where their energy is lower, if they aren't already there. Both the rubidium tracers and the potassium BEC will be trapped with approximately the same trapping potential by a strong, far off-resonant laser (orange), via the dipole force. Magnetic trapping cannot be used, as polarisation gradient cooling does not work in the presence of a magnetic field.

and temperatures, such that three body collisions are suppressed and *s*-wave scattering dominates the interspecies interactions [?, p 120]. The rubidium atoms experience a potential due to the potassium:

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{2\pi\hbar^2 a_s}{m_r} \rho_K(\mathbf{r}), \quad (6.1)$$

where  $\rho_K(\mathbf{r})$  is the spatially varying atom density of the potassium condensate,  $a_s$  is the interspecies *s*-wave scattering length, and  $m_r = \frac{m_K m_{Rb}}{m_K + m_{Rb}}$  is the reduced mass of the scattering pair.

Vortex cores thus create potential wells for other atoms, since they are regions of low condensate density in a background of high density.

The basic setup of this experiment is shown in Figure 6.2. A potassium condensate will be formed, and then have cold rubidium atoms introduced to it (likely magnetically transported from a MOT). Both species will then be trapped at the focus of a high power 1064nm laser, using the dipole force.

Various methods will be used to create vortices in the condensate. These include bluff-body flow, where a repulsive potential is dragged through the condensate, and inducing a turbulent state by applying off resonant laser speckle. The rubidium atoms are then expected to become trapped in the low density vortex cores.

The atoms will be imaged with resonant or near-resonant laser light, depending on the exact scheme employed. We will attempt several imaging schemes, some of which involve the laser light also cooling the atoms to keep them trapped in the vortex cores.

The simplest imaging scheme involves only imaging a small amount of the tracer atoms at a time, by transferring population slowly from the  $|1, 1\rangle$  groundstate into an  $F = 2$  state where a resonant laser images them and likely removes them from the trap.

The simplest scheme which attempts to cool the rubidium atoms is ordinary polarisation gradient cooling, where the same light is used for imaging and cooling the atoms (Figure 6.2). This method precludes the use of a magnetic trap or large bias field, since either would destroy the cooling effect.

If this does not cool the atoms enough to keep them within the vortex cores, then a Feshbach resonance will be used to increase the interspecies scattering length, and alternative cooling schemes—which work in the presence of a magnetic field—will be investigated (see section ??).

We aim to be able to scatter  $10^5$  photons per second off each rubidium atom without it escaping its vortex core trap, and without causing so much heating as to destroy the condensate on a reasonable experimental timescale.

A high resolution, low aberration lens (numerical aperture  $\approx 0.5$ ) will focus the scattered light onto a fast capture, high quantum efficiency camera to produce images of vortex motion.

We will attempt the experiment first in a two-dimensional BEC, and attempt to observe an inverse cascade, which is predicted to occur if a small repulsive potential hill is added to the middle of the trapping potential of the condensate. Tracking vortex motion in two dimensions should also be much simpler due to the fact that vortices in 2D are pointlike rather than extended.

## 6.1 Simulations of Sisyphus cooling

ONE OF THE PROBLEMS with polarisation gradient cooling is that it doesn't work in a magnetic field. Usually this isn't an issue for the cooling stage used en-route to BEC; the magnetic field is simply temporarily switched off. Our imaging method would greatly benefit from a cooling method that did work in a magnetic field, since the repulsive interactions between  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  and  $^{41}\text{K}$  can be greatly enhanced via a Feshbach resonance at 34 gauss [33]. This would make the potential wells that the rubidium atoms see deeper, trapping them more strongly. However if the magnetic field destroys our cooling method then the atoms won't stay trapped for long.

This Feshbach resonance only occurs if both species are in their respective  $|F = 1, m_F = 1\rangle$  spin state<sup>3</sup>, so we would like a cooling method that has the rubidium atoms spending a significant amount of time in this state. Polarisation gradient cooling isn't particularly efficient when using this groundstate, due to the high probability of atoms in the  $F = 2$  excited state decaying to the  $F = 2$  groundstate, requiring repumping.

One possibility is to develop a sub-Doppler cooling scheme that works in a 34 G magnetic field. The basic Sisyphus mechanism—of atoms moving alternately between spin states which see different potentials—should be possible to find in many multi-level systems of sufficient complexity<sup>4</sup>. Below I describe one that uses four lasers to cool  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  in a 34 G field, with the atoms spending approximately half their time in the  $|1, 1\rangle$  state.

Incidentally, my initial misunderstanding of polarisation gradient cooling coupled with a misplaced negative sign in my calculations—which hid that misunderstanding—led me to construct a scheme qualitatively different from conventional PGC. This scheme uses blue detuned light, and the main cooling force comes from atoms ascending repulsive optical potential hills, rather than climbing out of attractive potential wells as in ordinary PGC.

In section 6.1.4, I describe another cooling scheme, recently suggested by Kris Helmer-son, which uses the vortex cores themselves as the potential hills in a Sisyphus mechanism.

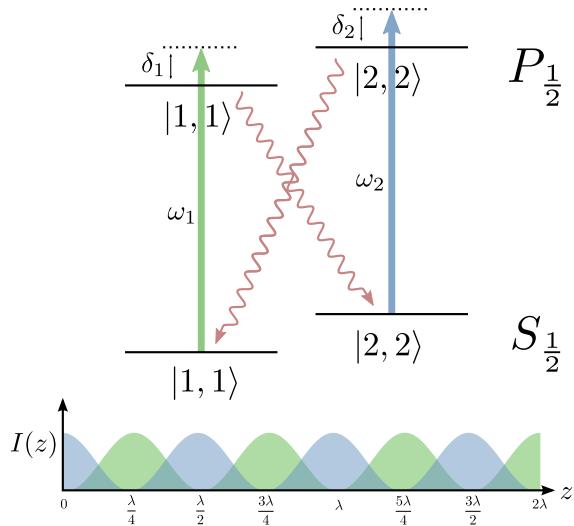
<sup>3</sup> $F$  is not a good quantum number in a nonzero magnetic field, so what we really mean writing this is the state that one would get if starting in an  $F$  state and adiabatically ramping the field up (with no coupling between the states—so that crossings are not avoided).

<sup>4</sup>And indeed, many other Sisyphus cooling mechanisms exists other than polarisation gradient cooling [20, p 116].

### 6.1.1 Description of cooling scheme

My scheme involves four lasers, two for cooling and two for repumping. First let's focus on the cooling lasers only. Looking at Figure 6.3, imagine that we have a rubidium atom

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 6.3:** An idealised depiction of the cooling scheme, with repump lasers and undesired states not shown. Two lasers on the  $D_1$  line are used for cooling, both linearly polarised, and arranged so as to form two interleaved standing waves. Both are blue detuned from the transitions they target, and they differ by about 6.8 GHz. This difference means that the alignment of the two standing waves can only be maintained over a distance of about a centimetre.

at  $z = 0$  and in the  $|1, 1\rangle$  hyperfine groundstate. Here our atom sees no light, as the intensity of the cooling laser labeled  $\omega_1$  is zero, and it is in the wrong state to be pumped by the  $\omega_2$  laser (which is not resonant with any transitions from the  $|1, 1\rangle$  groundstate).

As our atom moves rightward however, it will have to climb the repulsive potential hill formed by the  $\omega_1$  laser. As it does so, its  $|1, 1\rangle$  excited state probability will increase, and along with it, the probability of spontaneous emission. Spontaneous emission will be most likely to occur near the top of the potential hill where the laser intensity—and hence the excited state probability—is greatest.

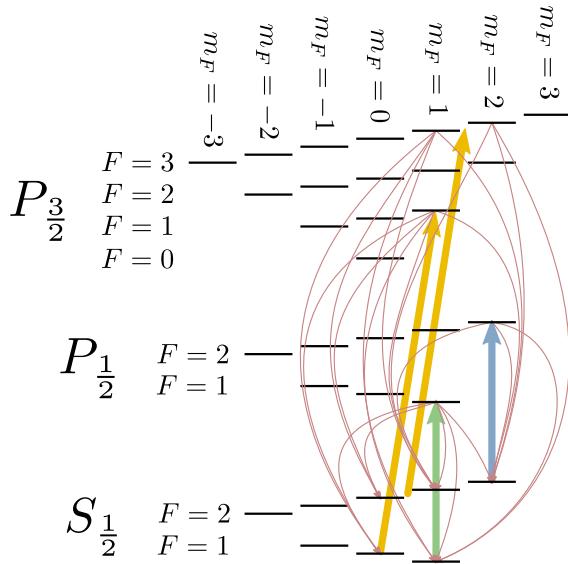
The most likely groundstate for the atoms to decay to from the  $|1, 1\rangle$  excited state is the  $|2, 2\rangle$  groundstate, and this is most likely to occur near  $z = \frac{\lambda}{4}$ . If this occurs, we now have an atom in the  $|2, 2\rangle$  groundstate at  $z = \frac{\lambda}{4}$ , a situation similar to that in which it started. Again, our atom now sees no light, but which laser has zero intensity and which targets the wrong transition are swapped.

As our atom continues rightward, it now has to contend with the potential hill formed by the  $\omega_2$  laser, and is most likely to undergo spontaneous emission from the  $|2, 2\rangle$  excited state near the top of the potential hill. This time emission is most likely to put the atom into the  $|1, 1\rangle$  groundstate.

This process repeats, with atoms repeatedly climbing potential hills and being cooled. They spend approximately half their time in the  $|1, 1\rangle$  groundstate, allowing us to take advantage of the strong interspecies repulsion that that state entails for our two atomic species.

Of course, as is always the case, things aren't that simple. Whilst the two spontaneous decays mentioned above are the most likely, they are by no means the only possibilities. Some spontaneous decays will put the atoms back into the groundstate from which they came, with no harm done except a little extra heating from the photon recoil. Other decays however will put our atom into states that are not involved in the cooling scheme, where they will remain with no further cooling unless we do something about it. For this we need repump lasers (Figure 6.4).

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 6.4:** The full cooling scheme, including repump lasers (yellow), cooling lasers (blue and green), and all possible decay paths (red). The repump beam which is drawn in between two ground and excited states has a frequency equal to the average of those two transitions.

There are three states that the atom might end up in as a result of decay from the two excited states involved in the cooling process, and two repump lasers are used to excite them to three  $P_{\frac{3}{2}}$  states. Two of these transitions are similar enough that they can be addressed with the same laser.

### 6.1.2 Methods

This scheme was simulated for the case of a single atom, with the internal state of the atom modelled with the Schrödinger equation in the spin basis, the state vector being a complex 32-vector<sup>5</sup>. The coupling terms between each pair of states were computed by solving the eigenvalue problem in the spin basis, with the Hamiltonian including Zeeman terms, and projecting the resulting eigenvectors onto the zero field eigenvectors. The zero field eigenvectors have easily computed coupling constants<sup>6</sup>, a weighted sum of which gives the coupling constants for the states at higher field<sup>7</sup>. Since the coupling constants are dependent on the laser intensity, they were re-computed constantly as the atom moved through different intensities of the cooling beams. This process produced a set of 32 coupled differential equations for the complex amplitudes of each state [20, p 4], of the form :

$$i\hbar \frac{dc_e(t)}{dt} = -\frac{1}{2}e \sum_{g,n} E_n \langle g|q_n|e\rangle c_g(t) e^{-i\delta_{nge}t}, \quad (6.2)$$

and

$$i\hbar \frac{dc_g(t)}{dt} = -\frac{1}{2}e \sum_{e,n} E_n \langle g|q_n|e\rangle c_e(t) e^{i\delta_{nge}t}, \quad (6.3)$$

where each  $c(t)$  is the complex amplitude of one state; the  $e$  indices are over the excited states and the  $g$  indices over the groundstates<sup>8</sup>; the  $n$  indices are over the lasers, with  $E_n$  being the amplitude of the  $n^{\text{th}}$  laser's electric field,  $\delta_{nge}$  the detuning of the  $n^{\text{th}}$  laser from the transition between the  $g^{\text{th}}$  ground and  $e^{\text{th}}$  excited states, and  $\langle g|q_n|e\rangle$  the dipole

<sup>5</sup>One complex number for each state in Fig. 6.4.

<sup>6</sup>Using the dipole approximation and the rotating wave approximation, following the derivation in [?, p 9].

<sup>7</sup>Each energy eigenstate at nonzero field is a superposition of exactly two of the zero field eigenstates.

<sup>8</sup>not to be confused with the electron charge or base of the natural logarithm, also used but not as indices.

Type	Transition(s) targeted	Detuning	Intensity (per beam)	Polarisation
cooling (standing wave)	$ S_{\frac{1}{2}}, 2, 2\rangle \rightarrow  P_{\frac{1}{2}}, 2, 2\rangle$	+ 66.6 MHz	5.0 mW cm <sup>-2</sup>	$\pi$
cooling (standing wave)	$ S_{\frac{1}{2}}, 1, 1\rangle \rightarrow  P_{\frac{1}{2}}, 1, 1\rangle$	+ 31.9 MHz	5.0 mW cm <sup>-2</sup>	$\pi$
repump (single beam)	$ S_{\frac{1}{2}}, 2, 1\rangle \rightarrow  P_{\frac{3}{2}}, 2, 2\rangle$ $ S_{\frac{1}{2}}, 2, 0\rangle \rightarrow  P_{\frac{3}{2}}, 2, 1\rangle$	Midway between	50.0 mW cm <sup>-2</sup>	$\sigma^+$
repump (single beam)	$ S_{\frac{1}{2}}, 1, 0\rangle \rightarrow  P_{\frac{3}{2}}, 1, 1\rangle$	0	10.0 mW cm <sup>-2</sup>	$\sigma^+$

**Table 6.1:** The parameters used in the laser cooling simulations. There are four lasers, each with a specified polarisation, intensity, and detuning from the transition it targets.

moment between the  $g^{\text{th}}$  ground and  $e^{\text{th}}$  excited states for the polarisation of the  $n^{\text{th}}$  laser.

The external motion of the atom was modelled classically, with the atom having a definite position and velocity in one dimension. The force on the atom was computed using the gradient of the light shift that the two groundstates experience due to the standing waves formed by the cooling beams [20, eqn 3.16, p 33]. The atom's state was projected onto the two groundstates which see the cooling lasers. The resulting force on the atom was used in the classical equation of motion.

Spontaneous emission was handled by at each integration timestep, summing up all the population in  $P_{\frac{1}{2}}$  and  $P_{\frac{3}{2}}$  excited states, weighted by their decay rates (equal to the natural linewidth). This gave the probability of decay per unit time. Multiplying by the duration of one timestep, and comparing with a random number then determined whether a decay was to occur.

In the event of a decay, one excited state was randomly chosen, weighted by their populations, and then one groundstate, weighted by the transition strengths from the excited state. All population was then put into that groundstate and the simulation continued, with one photon's worth of momentum in a random direction added to the atom's external state to account for photon recoil.

The equations of motion were solved using fourth order Runge–Kutta integration, with the error monitored by verifying that the overall probability summed over all states remained close to unity.

### 6.1.3 Results

The laser parameters used in the simulation are shown in Table 6.1. The magnetic field strength used was 34 G.

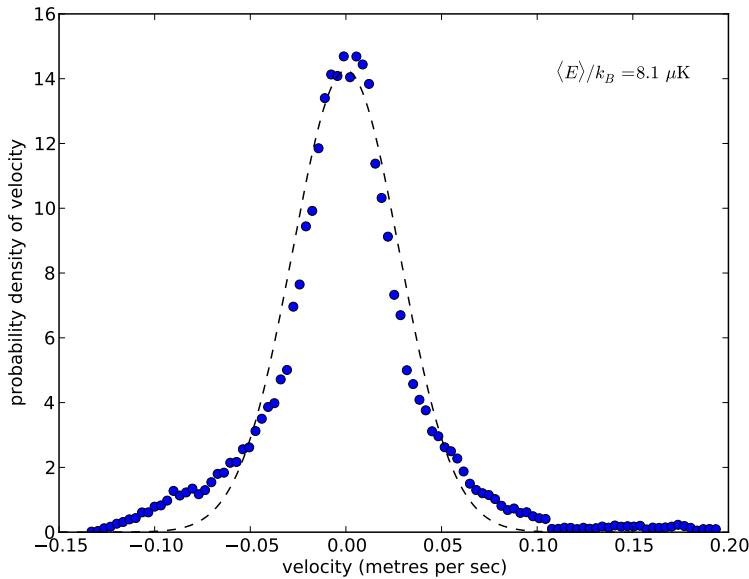
<sup>9</sup>Which is about ten timesteps per oscillation of the fastest oscillating terms, which oscillate at a rate equal to approximately half the 6.8GHz hyperfine splitting of the rubidium groundstates.

The simulation was run for 715 million integration timesteps of 20 picoseconds each<sup>9</sup>, for a total of 14.3 milliseconds of simulation time. This took 14 days of computer time. In that time, the atom moved a maximum distance of 26 micrometres from its starting position, and its final position was 790 nanometres from its starting position. The atom's initial velocity was 195 millimetres per second, and during the simulation it reversed the direction of its velocity 2226 times. 4103 photons were emitted, for an average scattering rate of  $2.87 \times 10^5$  photons per second.

Computing the time averaged energy of the atom over the whole simulation using:

$$\langle E \rangle = \frac{1}{2} m_{\text{Rb}} \langle v^2 \rangle, \quad (6.4)$$

```
rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 6.5:** Histogram of atom velocity over time, normalised such that it can be interpreted as a probability density. A best-fit Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution is shown as the dotted line. It is no surprise that it is not a good fit—there is no thermalisation happening since we have only one atom and no collisions. The average energy is more informative than the fit parameters for determining the temperature that an ensemble of such atoms would have if they were allowed to thermalise. This is because the average energy would stay constant throughout thermalisation, whereas the fit parameters would not. Only for a fully thermal distribution would the two methods agree. The long tail visible to the right is the atom's initial slowdown from its starting velocity.

and converting to temperature units with  $k_B T = \langle E \rangle$  gives a temperature of  $8.1 \mu\text{K}$ . Since this is only a one-dimensional simulation, a temperature approximately three times higher would be expected in three dimensions, as the atom would have approximately the same amount of energy in each spatial degree of freedom.

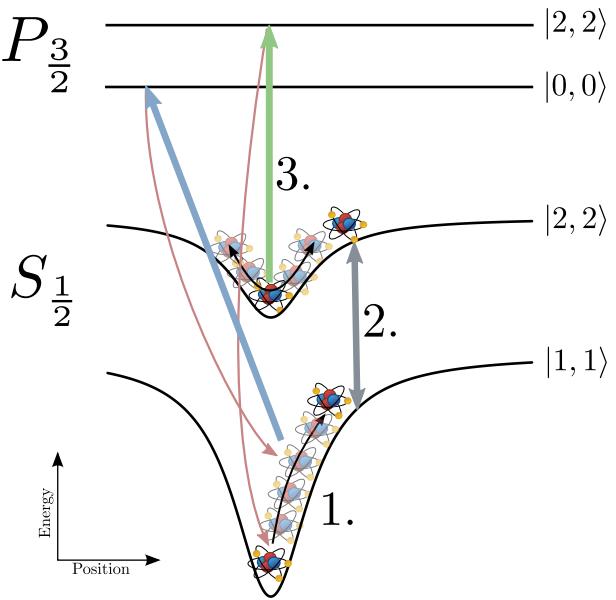
A histogram of what fraction of the time the atom spent at different velocities is shown in Figure 6.5.

This one-dimensional temperature corresponds to approximately 44 recoil energies, and if extrapolated to three dimensions, about 132 recoils. Given that the potassium vortex potentials are at most about 15 recoils deep without a Feshbach resonance, and only about 8 recoils when you consider that the rubidium is not in the ideal state half of the time, this result will only be able to keep rubidium atoms trapped in vortex cores if we can get a factor of 20 or so increase in the interspecies repulsion via a Feshbach resonance.

This simulation has not, however, been optimised. Whilst some parameters were computed from others based on assumptions about optimal scattering rates and the like, no attempt has been made to scan over parameter space to see if the temperature can be made lower. I plan on using a genetic algorithm to optimise the parameters by managing a population of simulations running on one of the university clusters. A significant speed up should be possible by excluding from the simulation the atomic states that were shown in the first run never to become occupied. This will eliminate approximately two thirds of the states, and since the simulation is quadratic in the number of states, this should provide an approximately 10× increase in simulation speed.

The simulation will also require repetition to verify that the results still hold when a

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```



**Figure 6.6:** A basic description of the vortex-assisted cooling scheme.

1. The rubidium atom in its  $|1, 1\rangle$  groundstate repeatedly scatters photons from the laser marked with the blue arrow, climbing the vortex potential as it does so. The optical transition's linewidth is large enough that the energy shift due to the vortex potential does not move it off resonance.
2. An RF or microwave transition however, has an extremely narrow linewidth; its effective linewidth is dependent only on the RF/microwave power. A microwave transition (grey arrow) comes into resonance only when the atom moves sufficiently far from the vortex core's centre, and coherently transfers population into the  $|2, 2\rangle$  groundstate.
3. The atom oscillates back and forth in the much shallower vortex potential that its  $|2, 2\rangle$  groundstate experiences. It is pumped weakly by the laser marked with the green arrow, and after a random time delay (and hence at a random position) spontaneously decays back to the  $|1, 1\rangle$  groundstate.

significant error, recently discovered, is corrected. The error is that the Zeeman sublevels used in the simulation were all incorrect by a sign. There is a large degree of symmetry with this change, and the scattering rates between all involved states are almost identical, so I am confident that this will only slightly change the results.

Ultimately only experimentation will show whether this method is viable, and what the optimal parameters are, but since it requires a large number of lasers, it is likely worth further theoretical investigation before attempting to implement it.

#### 6.1.4 Vortex-assisted Sisyphus cooling

Another idea for a cooling scheme is to use the vortex potential itself as a spatial discriminator for transferring atoms between states. Similar to how a MOT traps atoms by bringing them into resonance with optical pumping only when they are some distance from the trap's centre, we could use the shape of the vortex potential to bring an RF or microwave transition into resonance only when trapped tracer particles are some way up the side of a vortex core.

The basic idea is outlined in Figure 6.6. In the presence of the Feshbach resonance, atoms in the  $|1, 1\rangle$  state will scatter some tens of photons, using whichever transition is most likely to have them decay to the same groundstate with minimal repumping (transitioning to the  $|0, 0\rangle$  excited state on the  $D_2$  line looks to be the best choice). As

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

the atom scatters photons, it climbs the side of the vortex potential, converting its new found kinetic energy (from photon recoil) into potential energy.

Due to the state-dependence of the interspecies scattering length, the vortex potentials for different states have different depths. This means that the RF or microwave frequency required to transition between the different hyperfine states and Zeeman sublevels varies as a function of space, and can be tuned so as to only be resonant with atoms which have nearly escaped the vortex core.

The atom is then transferred into a different hyperfine or Zeeman state (the  $|2, 2\rangle$  groundstate should suit) and the hope is that it then lacks the kinetic energy to escape the (shallower) vortex potential it now finds itself in. Rather, it will oscillate back and forth in the well until a weak laser pumps it back into the  $|1, 1\rangle$  groundstate via spontaneous emission from some excited state (again chosen to maximise the decay probability to  $|1, 1\rangle$ ; the  $|2, 2\rangle P_{\frac{3}{2}}$  excited state looks to be a good choice.)

If this goes to plan, statistically the atom will be closer to the center of the  $|1, 1\rangle$  vortex potential than when it left. Provided its corresponding drop in potential energy makes up for all the photon scattering (which provides fluorescence imaging), then we have a cooling scheme. It is yet another Sisyphus effect, with the atom climbing steep vortex potential hills and descending shallower ones.

This scheme will be simulated to determine its viability; preliminary calculations haven't turned up any problems yet.

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

This page intentionally left blank

---

## Wave mixing in Bose–Einstein condensates

### 7.1 Off-resonant four wave mixing

Describe the wave mixing experiments and their results, compare with the simulations I performed and provide the simplified three-level model explaining the results.

### 7.2 Spin wave mixing

Show results of spin wave mixing simulations, including scaling behaviour with increasing  $c_2$ .

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

This page intentionally left blank

# CHAPTER

# 8

## Hidden variables for semiclassical models with state-dependent forces

Hidden variable theories [CITE, CITE] are interpretations of quantum mechanics which posit that there are definite states underlying quantum wavefunctions, such that quantum indeterminacy is an illusion—an emergent phenomenon rather than a fundamental fact. The Bell inequality [CITE] proves that any such theory must be *nonlocal* in order to explain all the predictions of quantum mechanics, and perhaps in light of this, most physicists surveyed [CITE] do not believe that hidden variables underlie physical reality.

However, by framing quantum systems in classical terms, hidden variable theories can provide an excellent computational tool for *approximate* models of quantum systems, when it is reasonable to approximate some degrees of freedom as classical, yet other degrees of freedom need to be modelled quantum mechanically. Just as hidden variable theories have framed the quantum world in terms that are agreeable to the classical view of the world in the minds of some interpreters of quantum mechanics, so can they bridge the gap between a *simulated* quantum world and a *simulated* classical world coexisting in the same computer simulation.

In this chapter I describe what I call the ‘hidden variables semiclassical’ (HVSC) method: a method of combining quantum simulations with classical simulations, with hidden variables bridging the gap between the classical and quantum degrees of freedom. In this introduction I describe existing semiclassical methods, the manner in which their quantum and classical parts are typically coupled based on expectation values (which I’m calling the ‘Ehrenfest method’), and in which regimes this inaccurate—namely the Stern–Gerlach experiment and similar situations in which considerable entanglement between motional and internal degrees of freedom develop.

In [SECREF THE NEXT SECTION] I give the technical definition of a hidden variable theory, and motivate the use of such a theory for coupling quantum and classical degrees of freedom in such a way that the a semiclassical model can be made to agree more closely than the Ehrenfest method with the underlying fully quantum model it is approximating, and ultimately, with experiment.

In section [SECREF THE SECTION AFTER THAT] I then go into the implications of welcoming a hidden variable into a semiclassical model, including additional required assumptions and approximations, and I derive the equations of motion for the model as a whole. Then in section [SECREF] I discuss the method further including its limitations.

Throughout this chapter, I make comparison between the HVSC and Ehrenfest methods. The two methods share most of the same flaws, save for HVSC’s ability to reproduce the Stern–Gerlach experiment. As such HVSC is an incremental improvement on the

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

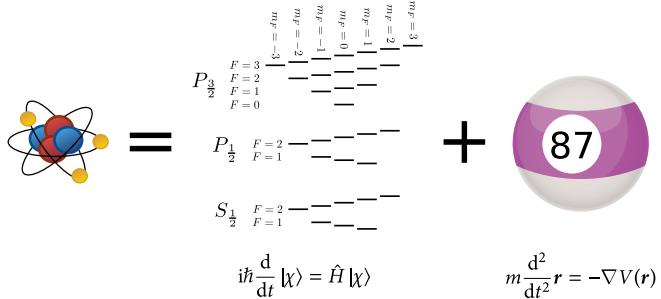


Figure 8.1: Artist's depiction of a semiclassical atom.

Ehrenfest method that solves this one specific problem. My method has a number of crude approximations—namely that wavepackets have a fixed size and that the decoherence of the atom's internal state is Markovian—and the wavepacket size and decoherence rate are estimated using approximate formulae. While crude, this is nonetheless an improvement over the Ehrenfest method's implicit assumption that decoherence does not occur at all (in which case the wavepacket size does not matter, as I will show), which is considerably less correct than even the crudest calculation of a Markovian decoherence rate. The HVSC method forces these assumptions to be made explicit, and serves as a minimal improvement to the Ehrenfest method, taking into account the simplest kind of decoherence only. Further improvements to the method are likely possible, but would be computationally more intensive to implement and unlikely to be worth it given the typical accuracy demanded of semiclassical simulations.

### 8.0.1 Semiclassical models

A semiclassical model is any model in which some degrees of freedom are treated quantum mechanically, and others classically. The most common combination is that of treating an atom's internal electronic state quantum mechanically and its motional degree of freedom classically. This is useful whenever the quantum effects of the atom's motion are not of interest, for example if temperatures are high and thus atomic wavelengths are short—such that quantum effects simply aren't visible in the motion of the particles and so they can accurately be modelled as classical billiard balls. The energy gaps between different electronic states are so large however that only at very high temperatures (at which atoms ionise anyway) do they start to appear as a continuum compared to thermal energy scales, and the interaction of different spin states of the atom with different optical and magnetic fields does not make them appear as classical continua either. Thus, quantum effects can be ignored for centre of mass motion of the atom, but not for the relative motion of its electrons with respect to the nucleus, or for the nuclear and electronic spin degrees of freedom.

In this regime, atoms are often modelled semiclassically, with these internal degrees of freedom modelled using a state vector  $|\chi\rangle$  evolving according to a Hamiltonian  $\hat{H}$  via the Schrödinger equation, and the centre of mass motion modelled as a position  $\mathbf{r}$  and velocity  $\mathbf{v}$  evolving according to Newton's second law (Figure 8.1).

Once one has defined a potential function  $V(\mathbf{r})$  and a Hamiltonian (also possibly varying with space)  $\hat{H}(\mathbf{r})$ , and other possible additions<sup>1</sup>, ones job is done and the rest can be left to numerical differential equation solvers to evolve some concrete vector representation  $\chi$  of  $|\chi\rangle$  as well as the state variables  $\mathbf{r}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  for motional degree of

<sup>1</sup>Such using a Monte-Carlo wavefunction method [CITE, SECREF?] to model the effect of spontaneous emission on  $|\chi\rangle$ , and modifying  $\mathbf{v}$  instantaneously by a random-direction recoil velocity upon each photon emission

freedom in time according to the coupled differential equations

$$\frac{d}{dt} |\chi\rangle = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}(\mathbf{r}) |\chi\rangle, \quad (8.1)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{v} = -\frac{1}{m} \nabla V(\mathbf{r}), \quad (8.2)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{v}. \quad (8.3)$$

In the next subsection I explain why it's not always that simple.

### 8.0.2 Stern–Gerlach separation and evaporative cooling

In the Stern–Gerlach experiment [CITE], particles with quantum spin and a magnetic moment—atoms for example—are fired as a beam through a region of space with a magnetic field gradient. The well known result is that two clusters of positions (if the atoms are spin  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) are observed once the beam emerges, rather than a continuous smear of positions, indicating that angular momentum—like many quantities in quantum mechanics—is quantised.

This is the case even if one spin-polarises the particles before they are passed through the magnetic field gradient, say putting them in an eigenstate of the  $\hat{F}_x$  operator. Then, if the magnetic field is along the  $z$  direction, and the gradient is also in the  $z$  direction, two clusters of positions are also observed, even though all particles were in the same state when they entered the region in which there was a magnetic field gradient. This is a display of the indeterminacy of quantum mechanics: even though all particles had the same initial state, there were nonetheless different outcomes for each particle.

The Stern–Gerlach effect is a consequence of quantum mechanics, to be sure, but it has little to do with the wave nature of the atoms. If we introduced some double slits for the atoms to pass through in addition to the magnetic field gradient, then we would be seeing the wave nature of the atoms as interference patterns at the detection screen at the end of the experiment. But if we do not, and if the particles have short de-Broglie wavelengths, then quantum mechanics is not apparent in the motion of the particles through space—except via the influence of spin on seemingly choosing one trajectory or the other. The effect is well understood quantum mechanically, but is difficult to model semiclassically because even if we are happy to approximate wavepackets as small, the wavepackets do not take a single trajectory. Rather they split into two wavepackets, with the part of the superposition corresponding to one spin projection state (along the direction of the local magnetic field) moving one way, and the part of the superposition with the other spin projection going the other way. The trajectories can still be sill quite classical, it's just that there are two of them.

A similar situation exists in RF evaporative cooling (Section 2.1.5) of cold atoms enroute to BEC. Atoms are trapped in a magnetic trap, and are spin polarised so as to be fully spin down (for  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  this is the trapped state) with respect to the local magnetic field at the position of each atom. The magnetic field's direction—not just its magnitude—varies in space, and so different atoms have different spins, but they are all spin down with respect to the quantisation axis of the local magnetic field.<sup>2</sup>. As the atoms move through space, they move in orbits—punctuated by collisions—about the magnetic field zero at the centre of the trap, since they feel a force  $F \propto -\nabla|\mathbf{B}|$  due to the gradient of the Zeeman potential. Provided they are moving slowly (specifically, provided their Larmor precession period is short compared to the time the magnetic field as seen by the atom takes to change by a non-negligible fraction of its current value), the atoms' spins adiabatically follow the local field and remain spin-down, even as the field as seen by each atom fully reverses its direction every half orbital period.

<sup>2</sup>Out of habit we are already speaking semiclassically—to talk about the atoms' position is to assume they have one—and yet we're describing their spin quantum mechanically

Near the centre of the trap where the atoms are moving faster, the fields are small and therefore have large fractional derivatives and lead to large Larmor periods, adiabaticity no longer holds and the atoms may make spin transitions with respect to their local magnetic field. Once an atom passing close to the field zero has evolved into a superposition of spin projection states with respect to the local field, it is in a situation identical to the initial condition of the Stern–Gerlach experiment, causing the spin projection components to spatially separate in the magnetic field gradient. The spin up component is anti-trapped and repelled from the centre of the trap, and the zero spin projection component (since the groundstate of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  is spin-1) feels no force and moves in a straight line. The spin down component continues on an orbit about the field zero which is just as tight as before, unaffected by the close approach to the field zero other than being reduced in amplitude. Eventually a collision occurs, either with other atoms or with the walls of the vacuum system and the wavefunction collapses to choose one of these options, leading to atoms probabilistically leaving the trap (called Majorana losses [CITE]) or remaining trapped. Again, the trajectories can still be quite classical, it's just that there are three of them, and which is taken is probabilistic.

How can we model these effects semiclassically? Equations (8.1) to (8.3) are not sufficient, because there exists no single classical potential  $V(\mathbf{r})$  that can describe the motion of the atoms. Rather, the atoms feel a different force depending on which spin state they are in. Just as the Hamiltonian can be a function of space, so can the potential be a function of the internal state of the atom:  $V = V(\mathbf{r}, |\chi\rangle)$ . Ehrenfest's theorem states that [CITE]

$$m \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \langle \hat{\mathbf{r}} \rangle = -\langle \nabla \hat{V} \rangle, \quad (8.4)$$

where the expectation values are over all degrees of freedom, not just motional. If we approximate a small wavepacket centred at the position  $\mathbf{r}$  in order ignore the wave nature of the atoms, this becomes:

$$m \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \mathbf{r} = -\nabla \langle \chi | \hat{V}(\mathbf{r}) | \chi \rangle, \quad (8.5)$$

where the operator  $\hat{V}(\mathbf{r})$  now only acts on the subspace of the internal state of the atom, since we have already taken an expectation value over (a small region of) space. Provided all potentials the atom is subjected to are included in the Hamiltonian for its internal state (including any energy offsets that do not depend explicitly on the internal state), this is nothing but

$$m \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \mathbf{r} = -\nabla \langle \chi | \hat{H}(\mathbf{r}) | \chi \rangle, \quad (8.6)$$

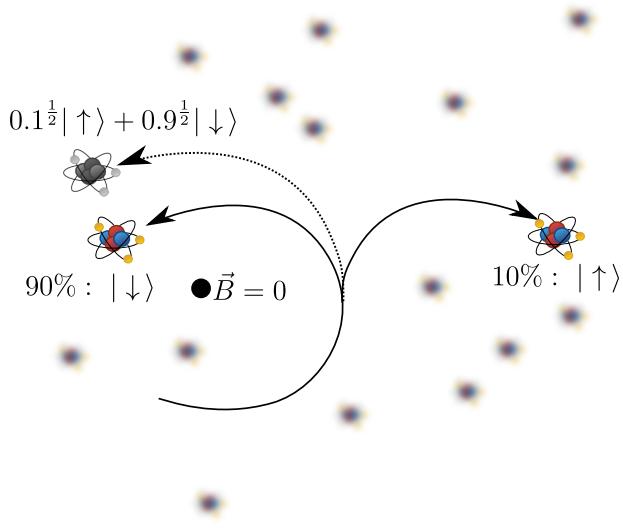
where  $\hat{H}$  is the Hamiltonian describing the evolution of the atom's internal state. We now can construct the *Ehrenfest semiclassical method* describing how the *expectation value* of a well localised atom's position evolves with time:

$$\frac{d}{dt} |\chi\rangle = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}(\mathbf{r}) |\chi\rangle, \quad (8.7)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{v} = -\frac{1}{m} \langle \chi | \hat{H}(\mathbf{r}) | \chi \rangle, \quad (8.8)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{v}. \quad (8.9)$$

The Ehrenfest semiclassical method is the same as the simple semiclassical method (8.1) to (8.3), except that it has an answer to the question “What should we use for  $V(\mathbf{r})$  when



**Figure 8.2:** todo

the atom is in a superposition of states that feel different potentials?", which is "use the expectation value".

This is all well and good if the expectation value of position is a good approximation to the situation being modelled. But in the Stern–Gerlach experiment and Majorana losses in magnetic traps, the expectation value of position is a poor match to reality. In the Stern–Gerlach experiment beginning with spin-polarised atoms, this would result in a single blob in the middle of the screen, rather than two. And in an atom approaching the field zero in a magnetic trap, it would result in the atom broadening its orbit somewhat, rather than splitting into multiple possible trajectories (Figure 8.2). Semiclassical simulations of evaporative cooling performed by Christopher Watkins [CITE] displayed an unphysical heating of the atom cloud that I believe is due to the Ehrenfest method's inability to model Stern–Gerlach separation. In a real magnetic trap during evaporative cooling to Bose–Einstein condensation, the mean free path is large enough that the part of the wavepackets that are no longer trapped will usually leave the trap without colliding with any other atoms. This means that the energy the untrapped and anti-trapped components have gained relative to the trapped component moving away from the field zero is not usually shared with other atoms upon collision—the extra energy leaves with the atoms. However, if a close approach to the magnetic field zero merely means a broadening of the atoms orbit, then the extra energy does not leave as fast, if at all, and can be shared with other atoms via collisions, turning what would have been an atom loss effect into an overall gradual heating of the cloud.

So how can we modify a semiclassical method to choose only one trajectory? Firstly, since each trajectory corresponds to one of the internal states (though some might be degenerate), our model must choose an internal state and use the classical trajectory corresponding to that internal state only. Secondly, since all atoms begin in identical states and yet some take one trajectory and some another, this choice must be probabilistic. Finally, the probabilities must be consistent with those from quantum mechanics, i.e. the Born rule: the probability of an atom taking each trajectory must be proportional to the squared amplitude of the internal state of the atom, projected onto the eigenstate corresponding to that trajectory.

```

rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc

```

There exists a category of theories dealing with precisely this question of how to choose a specific state of a quantum system in a stochastic way, such that the probability of having chosen a state is equal to that given by quantum mechanics. Such theories are called “hidden variable” theories, and the number specifying which state has been chosen is the “hidden variable”.

## 8.1 Hidden variable theories

In his paper *Quantum computing and dynamical quantum models*, Aaronson defines a “dynamical quantum model”[CITE]:

A *dynamical quantum model* assigns an eigenstate to a specified observable even when no measurement is made, and gives a stochastic evolution rule for that eigenstate. Such a model yields a distribution of classical histories of a quantum state

In a later paper, *Quantum computing and hidden variables*, superseding the first, Aaronson renames dynamical quantum models *hidden-variable theories* and instead defines:

For us, a hidden-variable theory is simply a way to convert a unitary matrix that maps one quantum state to another, into a stochastic matrix that maps the initial probability distribution to the final one in some fixed basis

This is what a hidden-variable theory is for the purposes of this chapter as well. Though the second paper supersedes the first, the definition it gives is more tangible for us—we wish to *assign an eigenstate* to our atoms (choose one of the internal states in order to decide which trajectory to follow), and have a *stochastic evolution rule* for which eigenstate is chosen at any one time (allow the atom to begin taking a different trajectory if it makes transitions between states).

But the second definition is more specific. The stochastic evolution rule is in the form of a stochastic matrix, with elements equal to transition probabilities for some time interval. And the rule should be in some way based on the unitary evolution that the quantum system evolves according to in the same interval of time, such that the initial and final probabilities of the stochastic matrix and unitary evolution agree. That is, if a quantum state  $|\chi\rangle$  evolves in a certain basis  $\{|n\rangle\}$  according to a unitary  $\hat{U}(t', t)$ :

$$\begin{bmatrix} \chi_1(t') \\ \chi_2(t') \\ \chi_3(t') \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} U_{11}(t', t) & U_{12}(t', t) & U_{13}(t', t) & \dots \\ U_{21}(t', t) & U_{22}(t', t) & U_{23}(t', t) & \dots \\ U_{31}(t', t) & U_{32}(t', t) & U_{33}(t', t) & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \chi_1(t) \\ \chi_2(t) \\ \chi_3(t) \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix}, \quad (8.10)$$

where  $\chi_n = \langle n|\chi\rangle$  and  $U_{nm}(t', t) = \langle n|\hat{U}(t', t)|m\rangle$ , then a hidden variable theory is a matrix-valued function  $S(U(t', t), \chi(t))$ , where  $\chi(t)$  and  $U(t', t)$  are the vector and matrix representations of the state vector  $|\chi\rangle(t)$  and unitary  $\hat{U}(t', t)$  in the  $\{|n\rangle\}$  basis, that satisfies:

$$\begin{bmatrix} |\chi_1(t')|^2 \\ |\chi_2(t')|^2 \\ |\chi_3(t')|^2 \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{11}(t', t) & S_{12}(t', t) & S_{13}(t', t) & \dots \\ S_{21}(t', t) & S_{22}(t', t) & S_{23}(t', t) & \dots \\ S_{31}(t', t) & S_{32}(t', t) & S_{33}(t', t) & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} |\chi_1(t)|^2 \\ |\chi_2(t)|^2 \\ |\chi_3(t)|^2 \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix}, \quad (8.11)$$

In essence, if quantum unitary evolution takes amplitudes to amplitudes, a hidden variable theory takes probabilities to probabilities. Thus the elements of  $S$  are conditional probabilities—or transition probabilities—for a hidden variable  $\eta(t)$ , giving the chance

that the state  $|\eta\rangle \in \{|n\rangle\}$  assigned by the hidden variable will change from one to another in the given time interval: [double check indices]

$$\Pr(\eta(t')=i|\eta(t)=j) = S(U(t', t), \chi(t))_{ij}. \quad (8.12)$$

There are many ways to define functions  $S$  that satisfy this condition. The simplest is to ignore the unitary completely and set  $S_{ij} = |\chi_i(t')|^2$  for all  $n$ , which yields:

$$\Pr(\eta(t')=i|\eta(t)=j) = |\chi_i(t')|^2, \quad (8.13)$$

that is that the hidden variable  $\eta$  is equally likely to transition to a given value regardless of its previous value, and regardless of the unitary, and that the conditional transition probability from all input states is just the squared amplitude of the final state. This theory represents a hidden variable that will just jump between states randomly based on their amplitude, with no regard for whether there were actually amplitude flows between the states between which it is transitioning. Nonetheless, it matches the definition of a hidden variable theory— $S$  is a stochastic matrix, and the hidden variable on average will spend an amount of time in each state consistent with the Born rule.

Aaronson outlines [CITE] some additional axioms that hidden variables ought to satisfy, if we are to take them seriously, including reasonable statements about symmetries, and insensitivity to small perturbations. He goes on to prove that the properties cannot all be satisfied simultaneously, but some theories satisfy more of them than others.

It is convenient to introduce the matrix  $P$  of absolute transition probabilities. Summing (8.12) over all possible initial values of the hidden variable yields the absolute probability of it having a particular final value after the given time interval:

$$\Pr(\eta(t')=i) = \sum_j \Pr(\eta(t')=i|\eta(t)=j) \Pr(\eta(t)=j), \quad (8.14)$$

which, recognising that the final and initial probabilities must be the final and initial squared amplitudes of the state vector, can be rewritten:

$$|\chi_i(t')|^2 = \sum_j S(U(t', t), \chi(t))_{ij} |\chi_j(t)|^2. \quad (8.15)$$

We now define the matrix of absolute transition probabilities  $P$ :

$$P_{ij} = S_{ij}(U(t', t), \chi(t)) |\chi_j(t)|^2, \quad (8.16)$$

such that:

$$|\chi_i(t')|^2 = \sum_j P_{ij}. \quad (8.17)$$

So we have that  $P$  has row sums equal to the final squared amplitudes. And, because  $P_{ij} = S_{ij} |\chi_j(t)|^2$  and  $S$  is a stochastic matrix with column sums equal to one,<sup>3</sup> we have that  $P$  must have row sums equal to the initial squared amplitudes.

Now that we have introduced  $P$  and shown what its row and column sums must be, we come to a particularly simply defined hidden variable theory called the Schrödinger theory, discussed in Aaronson's hidden-variables paper [CITE]. The idea is to form  $P$  by starting with the matrix of absolute values of  $U$ , and simply scaling its rows and columns to have the correct values:<sup>4</sup>

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 b_1 |U_{11}(t', t)| & a_1 b_2 |U_{12}(t', t)| & a_1 b_3 |U_{13}(t', t)| & \dots \\ a_2 b_1 |U_{21}(t', t)| & a_2 b_2 |U_{22}(t', t)| & a_2 b_3 |U_{23}(t', t)| & \dots \\ a_3 b_1 |U_{31}(t', t)| & a_3 b_2 |U_{32}(t', t)| & a_3 b_3 |U_{33}(t', t)| & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}, \quad (8.18)$$

<sup>3</sup>In order to more clearly compare to quantum evolution, we are using left stochastic matrices, which multiply column vectors of probabilities from the left, contrary to the most common convention for stochastic matrices which is to multiply row matrices from the right. Thus  $S$  has unit column sums, whereas the corresponding right stochastic matrix (its transpose) would have unit row sums.

<sup>4</sup>One might expect that the absolute value squared might be a better choice, since this matches Fermi's golden rule. Aaronson argues in his paper, when discussing his own hidden-variable theory *Flow theory* why absolute values of elements of the unitary have nice properties, and we show later that the row and column scalings reproduce Fermi's golden rule in any case, as they must for the hidden variable theory to work.

that is,

$$P_{ij} = a_i b_j |U_{ij}(t', t)|, \quad (8.19)$$

where the row scalings  $\{a_i\}$  and column scalings  $\{b_j\}$  satisfy:

$$\sum_j a_i b_j |U_{ij}(t', t)| = |\chi_i(t')|^2, \quad (8.20)$$

$$\sum_i a_i b_j |U_{ij}(t', t)| = |\chi_j(t)|^2, \quad (8.21)$$

which can be solved numerically, and then the Schrödinger theory stochastic matrix then able to be extracted by inverting (8.16):

$$S_{ij}(U(t', t), \chi(t)) = a_i b_j \frac{|U_{ij}(t', t)|}{|\chi_j(t)|^2}. \quad (8.22)$$

### 8.1.1 Numerically evaluating Schrödinger theory

<sup>5</sup>The values of  $\{a_i\}$  and  $\{b_j\}$  are only determined up to an overall multiplication of each  $\{a_i\}$  by a constant and division of each  $\{b_j\}$  by the same constant, since only products  $a_i b_j$  appear in the resulting scaled matrix

<sup>6</sup>With the caveat that since (as mentioned in the previous footnote) the row and column scalings are only determined up to an overall multiplication/division, occasional multiplication of all  $\{a_i\}$  and division of all  $\{b_j\}$  by a constant may be necessary to prevent the values numerically overflowing or underflowing in the middle of a simulation.

There are many ways to solve numerically for the row and column scalings, but there is one unique solution for the resulting scaled matrix.<sup>5</sup> The simplest method is to simply alternate between scaling the rows to get the right row sums, then scaling the columns to get the right column sums, and repeating, that is, alternating between solving equation (8.20) for all  $a_i$ , and solving (8.21) for all  $b_i$ , until the result converges. This is called the Sinkhorn-Knopp method of r-c (row-column) scaling [CITE], but is computationally intensive, with slow convergence [CITE LINIAL]. An alternative is the method by Linial et al [CITE], which converges much faster. Both are iterative methods, and so in practice one can save the resulting row and column scalings at each integration step of a simulation and use them as the initial guesses for the same computation at the next integration step,<sup>6</sup> providing considerable speedup.

For the case of a  $2 \times 2$  system, the row and column scalings can be found analytically, with the result

$$a_1 = 1 \quad (8.23)$$

$$a_2 : a_2^2 + \left( \frac{1}{AB} - \frac{A}{B} |\chi_1(t)|^2 - \frac{B}{A} |\chi_2(t)|^2 \right) a_2 + \frac{|\chi_2(t')|^2}{|\chi_1(t')|^2} = 0 \quad (8.24)$$

$$b_1 = \frac{|\chi_1(t')|^2}{A + Ba_2} \quad (8.25)$$

$$b_2 = \frac{|\chi_2(t')|^2}{B + Aa_2}, \quad (8.26)$$

where  $a_2$  is the positive solution to the given quadratic,  $A = |U_{11}| = |U_{22}|$  and  $B = |U_{12}| = |U_{21}|$ . This result only holds in the case of Schrödinger theory for a state vector with two components subject to unitary evolution—not for row-column scaling in general—since it makes use of symmetries of unitary matrices and the fact that the initial and final probabilities given by the squared amplitudes of the state vector components must sum to unity.

Some further notes on numerics: the above expressions for Schrödinger theory and its analytic expression for a  $2 \times 2$  system involve dividing by elements of the unitary, and state populations, both of which may be zero or very close to zero. Whilst the relevant limits may exist, we cannot easily compute them numerically, and so I have taken to simply replacing small values of  $|U_{ij}|$ ,  $|\chi_i(t')|^2$  and  $|\chi_j(t)|^2$  with a small constant  $\varepsilon = 10^{-10}$ , ensuring that the convergence criterion (which represents a tolerance for the sum squared

error in the column sums) I pass to Linial's method is larger than the square of this by some margin, so as to allow convergence even though modifying the matrix elements may make the matrix no longer row-column scalable to higher precisions. A convergence criterion of  $10^{-16}$  for Linial's algorithm allows a sufficient margin and implies the root sum squared error in column sums will be at most  $10^{-8}$ , which is small compared to one—which is the sum of all column sums for a perfectly scaled matrix given that the column sums are probabilities that must add to unity.

Potentially faster algorithms exist for row-column scaling of matrices,<sup>7</sup> for example, ones that treat the problem as a root finding problem or optimisation problem aimed at solving the simultaneous equations (8.20) and (8.21) or minimising the residuals [A FAST ALGORITHM FOR MATRIX BALANCING PHILIP A. KNIGHT AND DANIEL RUIZ]. I had initially great success with Newton's method for finding a root to this set of equations (after fixing  $a_1 = 1$  to make them fully determined), which required considerably fewer iterations than Linial's method for small ( $3 \times 3$ ) random unitary matrices and random state vectors. However, the unitaries and state vectors in quantum mechanics are not random, and the fact that most elements of the unitary and state vector are zero when there is no evolution and the atom is in an eigenstate resulted in numerical difficulties with Newton's method that Linial's method does not seem to encounter. Similar to many of the methods in [A FAST ALGORITHM FOR MATRIX BALANCING], one could construct a hybrid method that takes a Newton step, and then checks the row sum and column sum residuals, and if they got larger compared to the previous step, ignores that step and takes a step of Linial's method instead. I have not attempted this, and for the moment use Linial's method, which I provide Cython code for in [APPENDIX].

A final note is that my hidden variables semiclassical method is not just agnostic to which matrix scaling algorithm is used, but that it is also not married to any particular hidden variable theory. An early version of the method [CITE THE ARXIV PAPER] was limited to two-component systems, and the probability of transition was computed as:

$$\Pr(\eta(t')=2|\eta(t)=1) = \max(0, |\chi_2(t')|^2 - |\chi_2(t)|^2), \quad (8.27)$$

$$\Pr(\eta(t')=1|\eta(t)=2) = \max(0, |\chi_1(t')|^2 - |\chi_1(t)|^2), \quad (8.28)$$

that is, I simply inspected the populations each step and declared any positive change in population of a state as a probability of transition from the other state. Since there were only two states, the originating state of the transition was unambiguous, but the method did not generalise to systems with three or more states.<sup>8</sup> However, it resulted in final populations in simulations on average in agreement with the underlying Schrödinger wave equation, leading me to suspect that the exact hidden variable theory used is not crucial, so long as it satisfies a few of Aaronson's axioms so as not to behave like the product theory. I use Schrödinger theory fairly arbitrarily, it being the one that seemed most easily computable out of the two presented in Aaronson's paper [CITE], but one might try using Aaronson's flow theory, or inventing another altogether. However, the main conclusion of Aaronson's paper is that if we could know the entire history of a hidden variable, we could use it to make a computer more powerful than a quantum computer. It is therefore perhaps not surprising that hidden variable theories ought to be computationally expensive to simulate. One cause for optimism however, if one wants to speed up my hidden variables semiclassical method, is the possibility that Aaronson's conclusion relies on entanglement between systems. If it does, such that hidden variables of unentangled systems are not equivalent to super-quantum computers, then there is hope, because my method does not require the hidden variable to model entanglement (or even mixed states for that matter), and therefore it might be possible that a simpler

<sup>7</sup>In my simulations for realistic  $3 \times 3$  Unitaries corresponding to evolution over small time intervals, Linial's method converges to the aforementioned tolerance in about 100 – 200 iterations, taking about 20 – 40  $\mu\text{s}$  per matrix on my computer. So it could be improved upon, but it is not prohibitive

<sup>8</sup>This was before I coincidentally came across the definition of a stochastic hidden-variable theory in Aaronson's book *Quantum computing since Democritus* [CITE] and realised that what I had made was a hidden variable theory, allowing me to choose a more general one from his paper.

hidden variable theory could be constructed that is sufficient for the purposes of my model, but is still fast to compute.

### 8.1.2 Time-dependent formulation of Tully's fewest-switches algorithm

[TODO flag this as speculative and untested unless I test it]

In this subsection I derive Tully's fewest-switches algorithm [CITE], with the distinction that the Hamiltonian may have arbitrary time-dependence. As such, the non-adiabatic transitions that can occur can be due to either the spatial variation of the Hamiltonian, or its time variation. It is important to be able to distinguish which of the two non-adiabatic effects is responsible for a given transition of the hidden variable, as energy conservation only applies in the case of a nonadiabatic transition due to spatial variation of the Hamiltonian, in which case the particle is paying/receiving the energy cost of a transition using its kinetic energy. However for a transition due to temporal variation of the Hamiltonian, energy can be added and removed from the particle by the driving field without conserving its total energy. Thus, when a time dependent potential is used in a hidden-variable semiclassical simulation, velocity corrections ought to only be performed following a hidden-variable transition if that transition was due to spatial variation in the Hamiltonian, and not temporal variation.

We begin with the time dependent Schrödinger equation for the internal state  $|\chi(t)\rangle$  of an atom, assuming it is well localised at position  $\mathbf{r}$ :

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} |\chi(t)\rangle = \hat{H}(\mathbf{r}, t) |\chi(t)\rangle \quad (8.29)$$

Now we take the unitary  $\hat{U}_H(\mathbf{r}, t)$  that transforms state vectors into the eigenbasis of  $\hat{H}$  such that

$$\hat{H}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \hat{U}_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) \hat{V}(\mathbf{r}, t) \hat{U}_H(\mathbf{r}, t), \quad (8.30)$$

where  $\hat{V}(\mathbf{r}, t)$  is a diagonal operator with diagonals equalling the adiabatic potentials that each eigenstate of  $\hat{H}$  is subject to in the adiabatic approximation. We can therefore define the state vector in the eigenbasis of  $H$  as:<sup>9</sup>

$$|\chi_H(t)\rangle = \hat{U}_H(\mathbf{r}, t) |\chi(t)\rangle \quad (8.31)$$

$$\Rightarrow |\chi(t)\rangle = \hat{U}_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) |\chi_H(t)\rangle, \quad (8.32)$$

Substituting (8.32) into (8.29) and premultiplying by  $\hat{U}(\mathbf{r}, t)$  yields

$$i\hbar \hat{U}(\mathbf{r}, t) \frac{d}{dt} \hat{U}_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) |\chi_H(t)\rangle = \hat{U}(\mathbf{r}, t) \hat{H}(\mathbf{r}, t) \hat{U}_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) |\chi_H(t)\rangle \quad (8.33)$$

which via the product rule and our definition of  $\hat{V}(\mathbf{r}, t)$  simplifies to the differential equation obeyed by the transformed state vector  $|\chi_H(t)\rangle$ :

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} |\chi_H(t)\rangle = \left[ \hat{V}(\mathbf{r}, t) - i\hbar \hat{U}(\mathbf{r}, t) \frac{d}{dt} \hat{U}_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) \right] |\chi_H(t)\rangle \quad (8.34)$$

$$= \hat{H}_{\text{eff}} |\chi_H(t)\rangle. \quad (8.35)$$

This equation has the same form as the Schrödinger equation, with the contents of the brackets comprising an effective Hamiltonian dictating the dynamics of the state vector in our chosen basis. Like a non-inertial reference frame in classical mechanics, use of this transformed basis has resulted in the appearance of an extra term in the Hamiltonian, the non-adiabatic coupling term depending on the time derivative of the transformation  $\hat{U}^\dagger$ .

Here we differ from Tully by proceeding without assuming that  $\hat{U}$  has no explicit time dependence. The total time derivative of  $\hat{U}^\dagger$  includes both its direct time dependence and the effect of motion through space; the latter obtainable via the chain rule:

$$\frac{d}{dt} U_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} U_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla U_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t), \quad (8.36)$$

where  $\mathbf{v} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}$ . Thus (8.37) becomes:

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} |\chi_H(t)\rangle = \left[ \hat{V}(\mathbf{r}, t) - i\hbar \hat{U}_H(\mathbf{r}, t) \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \hat{U}_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) - i\hbar \mathbf{v} \cdot \hat{U}_H(\mathbf{r}, t) \nabla U_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) \right] |\chi_H(t)\rangle. \quad (8.37)$$

The final term in brackets is identical to the non-adiabatic coupling term in the equation of motion as usually written in the surface-hopping literature [CITE SOME THINGS] being a matrix with elements:

$$\left( -i\hbar \mathbf{v} \cdot \hat{U}(\mathbf{r}, t) \nabla U_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) \right)_{ij} = -i\hbar \mathbf{v} \cdot \langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | \nabla | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle, \quad (8.38)$$

where  $\chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t)$  is the  $i^{\text{th}}$  eigenvector of  $\hat{H}(\mathbf{r}, t)$  and  $\langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | \nabla | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle$  is the *non-adiabatic coupling vector* between the  $i^{\text{th}}$  and  $j^{\text{th}}$  states referred to in the literature. The second to last term in brackets in (8.37) is the additional contribution due to the time-dependence of the Hamiltonian (more specifically: the time-dependence of its eigenbasis).

We now proceed identically to Tully, computing the rate of change of a an eigenstates population  $|c_i(t)|^2$  as:

$$\frac{d}{dt} |c_i(t)|^2 = c_i(t) \frac{d}{dt} c_i^*(t) + c_i^*(t) \frac{d}{dt} c_i(t), \quad (8.39)$$

where via (8.37) we have:

$$\frac{d}{dt} c_i(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \sum_j (H_{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{r}, t))_{ij} c_j(t) \quad (8.40)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d}{dt} c_i(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \sum_j \left[ V_{ij}(\mathbf{r}, t) - i\hbar \langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | (\partial_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle \right] c_j(t), \quad (8.41)$$

This gives for the time rate of change of the population  $|c_i(t)|^2$ :

$$\frac{d}{dt} |c_i(t)|^2 = \left[ -\frac{i}{\hbar} \sum_j c_i^*(t) (H_{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{r}, t))_{ij} c_j(t) \right] + \text{c.c.} \quad (8.42)$$

$$= -\frac{2}{\hbar} \sum_j \text{Im} \left( c_i^*(t) (H_{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{r}, t))_{ij} c_j(t) \right) \quad (8.43)$$

$$= -\frac{2}{\hbar} \sum_j \text{Im} \left( c_i^*(t) \left[ V_{ij}(\mathbf{r}, t) - i\hbar \langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | (\partial_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle \right] c_j(t) \right). \quad (8.44)$$

Since  $V(\mathbf{r}, t)$  is diagonal<sup>10</sup> and real,  $c_i^*(t) V_{ij}(\mathbf{r}, t) c_j(t)$  is zero when  $i \neq j$ , and has no imaginary part when  $i = j$ , leaving us with

$$\frac{d}{dt} |c_i(t)|^2 = 2 \sum_j \text{Re} \left( c_i^*(t) \langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | (\partial_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle c_j(t) \right). \quad (8.45)$$

<sup>10</sup>This is not always assumed in the surface hopping literature, since additional couplings are sometimes included in  $V$  which have not been removed by diagonalisation.

The change in  $|c_i(t)|^2$  in a small interval  $dt$  is then:

$$|c_i(t + dt)|^2 - |c_i(t)|^2 = 2dt \sum_j \operatorname{Re} \left( c_i^*(t) \langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | (\partial_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle c_j(t) \right). \quad (8.46)$$

This is the change in the probability of the particle being in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  state during that time interval. Tully identifies each term in the sum as a probability flow between a pair of states, and if non-negative, equates each term with the (unconditional) probability of a transition from the  $j^{\text{th}}$  state to the  $i^{\text{th}}$  state. We do the same, except that we identify two transition probabilities, one due to the spatial variation in the eigenbasis, and one due to the temporal variation. This gives us transition probability matrix elements:

$$P_{ij}^{\text{space}} = \max \left\{ 0, 2dt \operatorname{Re} \left( c_i^*(t) \langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle c_j(t) \right) \right\}, \quad (8.47)$$

$$P_{ij}^{\text{time}} = \max \left\{ 0, 2dt \operatorname{Re} \left( c_i^*(t) \langle \chi_i(\mathbf{r}, t) | \partial_t | \chi_j(\mathbf{r}, t) \rangle c_j(t) \right) \right\} \quad (8.48)$$

for transitions of the hidden variable from the  $j^{\text{th}}$  to the  $i^{\text{th}}$  eigenstate of  $\hat{H}(\mathbf{r}, t)$  during the time interval  $dt$  due to non-adiabatic spatial and temporal variations in  $\hat{H}(\mathbf{r}, t)$  respectively.

The corresponding conditional probabilities of a transition to the  $i^{\text{th}}$  state occurring—given that the hidden variable was already in the  $j^{\text{th}}$  state—can be obtained via (8.16) as:

$$S_{ij}^{\text{space}} = \frac{1}{|c_j(t)|^2} P_{ij}^{\text{space}}, \quad (8.49)$$

$$S_{ij}^{\text{time}} = \frac{1}{|c_j(t)|^2} P_{ij}^{\text{time}}. \quad (8.50)$$

Note that individually, these two matrices are not (left) stochastic matrices, since their columns do not individually sum to unity. Their sum is a (left) stochastic matrix however.

During a simulation, to choose whether a transition occurs due to spatial or temporal variations in the Hamiltonian, one should not make independent random choices based on the two above matrices. Rather one should assemble the probabilities of possible events—transitions from the current state to all others via both spatial and temporal non-adiabatic transitions—into a single list of probabilities, and then take the cumulative sum, resulting in a list of numbers between zero and one. A randomly generated number between zero and one can then be used to determine which event occurs, with the correct probability (Figure 8.3)

### 8.1.3 Framing fewest-switches as a hidden-variable theory

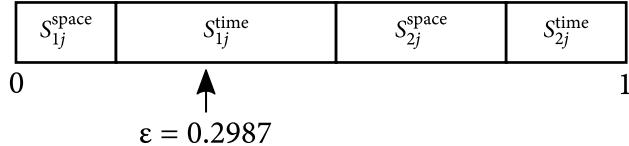
Tully's fewest-switches algorithm allows one to compute transition probabilities for a hidden variable given the Hamiltonian, the state amplitudes, and a small interval of time. Does this satisfy Aaronson's definition of a hidden variable theory? Not quite, since it requires the Hamiltonian rather than the unitary that describes state vector evolution over a particular time interval, however it is simple to reconcile the two sets of requirements. Given that the interval of time is small, the unitary describing evolution in the local basis can be linked to the effective Hamiltonian in (8.35) via

$$\hat{U}(t + dt, t) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \hat{H}_{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{r}, t) dt}, \quad (8.51)$$

where

$$\hat{H}_{\text{eff}} = \hat{V}(\mathbf{r}, t) - i\hbar \hat{U}(\mathbf{r}, t) \frac{d}{dt} U_H^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t) \quad (8.52)$$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc



**Figure 8.3:** Probabilistically choosing a transition. Here the hidden variable is in the  $j^{\text{th}}$  state and we are choosing whether it will transition to state 1 or 2 (one of which is the state it is already in), and whether it will transition due to a spatial or temporal non-adiabatic transition. All the probabilities for what may happen in a timestep sum to one, so an array of the cumulative probabilities can be constructed, and a random number drawn from the range  $[0, 1]$ . The index of the largest element of the array of cumulative sums that the random number is smaller than corresponds to the event to occur. In the above diagrammatic example, the result of the random draw is that the hidden variable is to transition to state 1 via a temporal non-adiabatic transition.

is the effective Hamiltonian in the eigenbasis of  $\hat{H}$ , the matrix representation of which can be extracted from the matrix representation of  $\hat{U}(t + dt, t)$  as:

$$H_{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{r}, t) dt = i\hbar \text{Log } U(t + dt, t) \quad (8.53)$$

$$\approx i\hbar (\mathbb{I} - U(t + dt, t)) \quad (8.54)$$

where  $\text{Log}$  is the principal value of the complex matrix logarithm.

Since only the matrix  $H_{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{r}, t) dt$  is required to compute transition probabilities according to (8.43), and not its component terms,<sup>11</sup> specifying the initial state vector and unitary for an interval of time evolution (both in the local basis) is a sufficient input to be able to compute transition probabilities using Tully's fewest-switches algorithm. The resulting matrix of probabilities then corresponds to the matrix we (and Aaronson) have been calling  $P$  in the context of hidden-variable theories. The corresponding stochastic matrix  $S$  can easily be obtained by scaling the columns of  $P$  by the state populations as in (8.16). Tully's fewest-switches algorithm thus satisfies Aaronson's definition of a hidden-variable theory. What is somewhat remarkable is the low computational complexity of computing probabilities via fewest-switches. There is no matrix scaling, no matrix permanents, or any other large computational expense. It is not clear how many of Aaronson's axioms are satisfied by fewest-switches, but since it does depend on the actual coupling strengths between states via the non-adiabatic Hamiltonian, one would expect it to satisfy a few of them.

<sup>11</sup>Though we do need its component terms if we wish to distinguish between spatially vs temporally induced transitions as in [SECREF].

#### 8.1.4 Distinguishing between spatial and temporal transitions in arbitrary hidden-variable theories

[TODO flag this as speculative and untested unless I test it]

In the above section [OR SECREF IF I MOVE THIS], we saw how to extract separate stochastic matrices from Tully's fewest-switches algorithm in order to distinguish between non-adiabatic transitions due to motion through space with a spatially varying Hamiltonian as compared to those due to the Hamiltonian's explicit time dependence. This fell naturally out of the derivation simply by not discarding the possible time-dependence of the Hamiltonian and otherwise proceeding similarly to Tully. For an arbitrary hidden variable theory however it is not so simple. In the case of Schrödinger theory for example, we have something of a black box which we feed unitaries and state vectors, and it gives us back stochastic matrices. It is not obvious how one might dig into the details of the matrix scaling to extract two separate conditional probabilities instead of one.

One method is to compute a unitary as usual for the total evolution of the state vector (excluding decoherence) during a timestep, and compute  $S^{\text{total}}$  from that according to

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

one's hidden variable theory. Then, repeat this step, but with a unitary computed by holding the Hamiltonian's explicit time dependence constant over the timestep (allowing  $\mathbf{r}$  to still vary as normal), to obtain the conditional transition probabilities  $S^{\text{space}}$  for non-adiabatic transitions due to spatial variations alone.

[NOT SURE THIS MAKES SENSE, THINK ABOUT IT MORE]

TODO:

- Define/describe what a hidden variable theory is, drawing heavily on Aaronson's [?] explanations. Give examples, argue why the Schrödinger theory is appealing.
- Motivate with Stern-Gerlach experiment, and derive the method, show what sorts of problems it solves and where it disagrees with other models, provide simulation results. Limitations: no time dependent potentials, no 3D.
- Possibly include speculation about these:
- Maybe include a test to see whether it actually does work in 3D as-is, since we haven't actually checked, we just haven't been able to show on paper that current behavior is correct in 3D (also haven't shown it's incorrect).
- Time dependent potentials could potentially be handled by approximating unitary as product of part due to spatial variation in  $H$ , and part due to time variation in  $H$ . compute transition probs for both such that a transition can be attributed to one or the other - only do velocity jumps to conserve potential if due to spatial motion, as time dependent potential can exchange energy with particle.
- Matrix scaling for Schrodinger theory, discuss methods: Sinkhorn-Knopp, Linial, and my one. Compare time complexity of algorithms so as to define the computational complexity of the hidden variables semiclassical method. Method is of course parallelisable on GPU or similar so is fast on parallel machines even if matrix scaling is slow.
- Discuss how it would make sense for the systems to behave in the presence of collisions w.r.t collapse of state vectors.
- Be sure to include picture from KOALA talk of atoms going in multiple directions

## 8.2 Approximate Markovian decoherence rate for separating wavepackets

Positional separation of two different internal states of an atom leads to decoherence of those states, with a decoherence factor  $r_{ij}(t)$  equal to the overlap of the spatial wavefunctions of the two components in question a time  $t$  after they began separating. Approximating both wavepackets as initially overlapping Gaussians of width  $\sigma$ , ignoring dispersion, and assuming they separate with constant relative acceleration  $a_{ij}$ , the decoherence factor is

$$r_{ij}(t) = \langle \psi_i(t) | \psi_j(t) \rangle \quad (8.55)$$

$$= C \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{x^2}{4\sigma^2}} e^{-\frac{(x-x_{\text{rel}})^2}{4\sigma^2} + ik_{\text{rel}}x} dx, \quad (8.56)$$

where

$$x_{\text{rel}}(t) = \frac{1}{2} a_{ij} t^2 \quad (8.57)$$

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

and

$$k_{\text{rel}}(t) = \frac{m}{\hbar} a_{ij} t \quad (8.58)$$

are the wavepackets' relative<sup>12</sup> position and wavenumber due to acceleration for a time  $t$  starting from zero relative velocity, and

$$C^{-1} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}} dx \quad (8.59)$$

<sup>12</sup>  $a_{ij}$ ,  $x_{\text{rel}}$  and  $k_{\text{rel}}$  are the acceleration, position, and wavenumber of the  $j^{\text{th}}$  component with respect to the  $i^{\text{th}}$  component, that is,  $a_{ij} = a_j - a_i$ , etc.

is a normalisation constant [TODO CHECK IF NEEDS TO BE SQUARED]. Note that this expression holds for any number of dimensions—relative motion is only along one axis so the integrals in all other directions equal one.

Evaluating the Gaussian integral (8.56) gives the following expression for the decoherence factor  $r_{ij}(t)$ :

$$r_{ij}(t) = e^{-\left[\frac{1}{8\sigma^2}x_{\text{rel}}^2 + \frac{i}{2}x_{\text{rel}}k_{\text{rel}} + \frac{\sigma^2}{2}k_{\text{rel}}^2\right]}. \quad (8.60)$$

This is a decoherence *factor*; it is the factor by which the  $(i, j)$  off-diagonal of the reduced density matrix for the atom's internal state will be reduced at time  $t$ . The corresponding decoherence *rate* is given by the logarithmic derivative of (8.60):

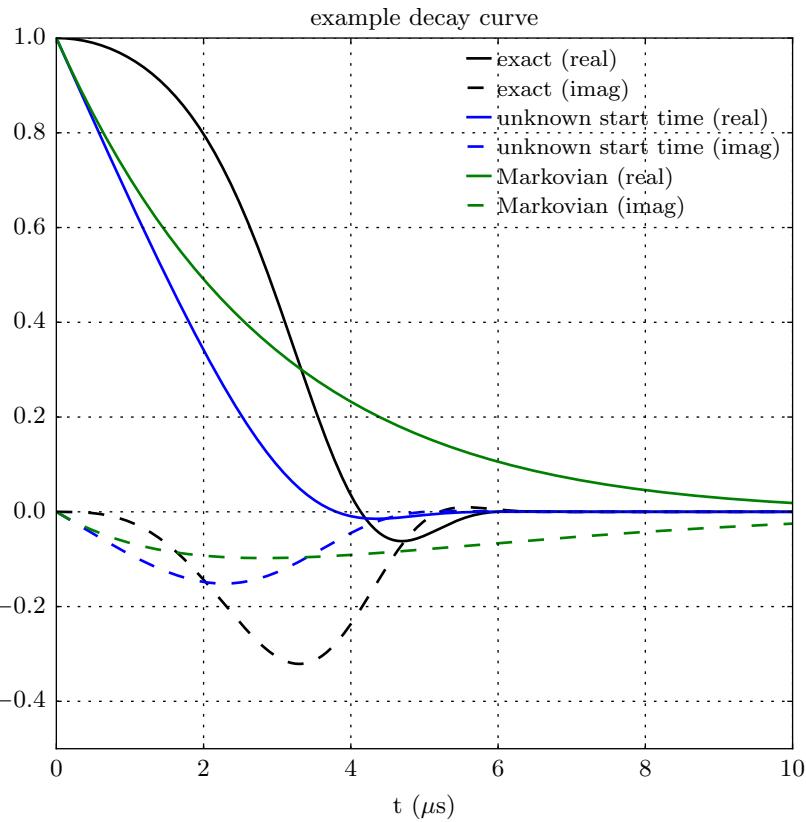
$$\Gamma_{ij}(t) = -\frac{1}{r_{ij}(t)} \frac{d}{dt} r_{ij}(t). \quad (8.61)$$

The fact that (8.60) does not describe a constant decoherence rate (i.e., it does not have the functional form of exponential decay) means that the back-action on the atom's internal state caused by measurements of its motional state will be different depending on the interval of time between measurements.

For example, the logarithmic derivative of (8.60) approaches zero as  $t$  goes to zero. This means that in the limit of infinitely frequent measurements, no decoherence occurs at all in between measurements, and the motional state is reset after each measurement such that the wavepackets never separate at all. This is the quantum Zeno effect, and its appearance in models of open quantum systems is usually treated as a reminder that the assumption of infinitely frequent strong measurements is unphysical [CITE].

Since experimentally we are not measuring atoms' motional states so frequently, we ought to wait until the wavepackets are completely separated before performing a projective measurement. As in quantum optics models of open quantum systems, in which the measurement interval "should be large enough to allow the photons to get away from the atom" [CITE The Quantum Jump Approach and Quantum Trajectories Gerhard C. Hegerfeldt], ours should be large enough for the atomic states to get away from each other.

If at large enough times, a decoherence rate is independent of time, that decoherence is called Markovian at that timescale. A Markovian environment is one that has no memory of the decoherence process—it "forgets" any information caused by past interaction with the system. Even though at short times, all decoherence rates in quantum mechanics tend to zero [CITE], if they become Markovian on a timescale shorter than other timescales of interest, the Markov approximation can be used and a constant decoherence rate used at all times. In quantum optics, the decoherence factor for the internal state of an atom due to photon emission indeed tends to exponential decay on timescales that are still much shorter than that of the system evolution, and thus the Markov approximation is accurate.



**Figure 8.4:** Caption.

Unlike quantum optics models, our decoherence factor does not describe Markovian decoherence on any timescale. In the limit of large  $t$ , its functional form is  $e^{-t^4}$ , not the exponential decay required to treat the decoherence as Markovian [CITE] at that timescale. Nonetheless, if we wish to write a time-local differential equation for the internal state of the atom, Markovian decoherence is the only kind we can include [CITE].

To that end, we will now construct a “time ignorant” version of  $r_{ij}(t)$  that answers the question “What is the expected decoherence factor at all future times, if you don’t know how long it has been since the two wavepackets began separating?” In this way we can compute an *average* decoherence rate  $\Gamma_{ij}$  described by our decoherence factor, even though  $r_{ij}(t)$  does not have a constant decoherence rate at large times. This essentially amounts to finding the best fitting exponential to  $r_{ij}(t)$ . Whilst this approximation is crude, it is nonetheless an improvement over the Ehrenfest model, which has no decoherence at all (i.e. it has a decoherence rate that is also constant like ours—but equal to zero).

We define the time-ignorant decoherence factor  $\tilde{r}_{ij}(t)$  as the overlap of the wavefunction of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  internal state with a superposition of wavepackets of the  $j^{\text{th}}$  internal state, with the superposition being over all times in the past the wavepackets began separating:

$$\tilde{r}_{ij}(t) = \langle \psi_i(t) | A \int_{-\infty}^0 |\psi_j(t-t')\rangle dt' , \quad (8.62)$$

where  $A$  is a normalisation constant such that  $\tilde{r}_{ij}(0) = 1$ . Since  $|\psi_i(t)\rangle$  is time independent (rather, since we can perform our calculations in the frame of reference in which it

is stationary), this is:

$$\tilde{r}_{ij}(t) = A \int_{-\infty}^0 r_{ij}(t-t') dt', \quad (8.63)$$

which is simply the convolution of our decoherence factor with a step function which is nonzero at all negative times. Our average decoherence rate  $\Gamma_{ij}$  is then given by the logarithmic derivative of  $\tilde{r}_{ij}(t)$  at  $t = 0$ :

$$\Gamma_{ij} = -\frac{\tilde{r}'_{ij}(0)}{\tilde{r}_{ij}(0)} \quad (8.64)$$

$$= -\frac{\int_0^\infty \tilde{r}'_{ij}(t) dt}{\int_0^\infty \tilde{r}_{ij}(t) dt} \quad (8.65)$$

$$\Rightarrow \Gamma_{ij}^{-1} = \int_0^\infty e^{-\left[\frac{1}{8\sigma^2}x_{\text{rel}}^2 + \frac{i}{2}x_{\text{rel}}k_{\text{rel}} + \frac{g^2}{2}k_{\text{rel}}^2\right]} dt. \quad (8.66)$$

As mentioned,  $\Gamma_{ij}$  is the decay constant for the best fitting exponential to our decoherence factor (8.60). Although (8.60) looks nothing like a decaying exponential in time, an exponential approximation to it nonetheless ought to decay to zero on the same timescale. An example of this is shown in Figure 8.4

In order to obtain an approximate analytic expression for this integral, we consider two limiting cases and then stitch them together in the intermediate regime. In the limit of small wavepackets,  $\sigma$  is small and thus the first term in the exponent in (8.66) is largest, and the third term is smallest. In this regime, which describes when positional separation (as opposed to separation in  $k$ -space) dominates the decoherence, we'll neglect the third term in the exponent and treat the second term as small relative to the first. This gives us:

$$\Gamma_{ij(\text{pos})}^{-1} \approx \int_0^\infty e^{-\left[\frac{1}{8\sigma^2}x_{\text{rel}}^2 + \frac{i}{2}x_{\text{rel}}k_{\text{rel}}\right]} dt. \quad (8.67)$$

$$\approx \int_0^\infty e^{-\frac{1}{8\sigma^2}x_{\text{rel}}^2} \left(1 - \frac{i}{2}x_{\text{rel}}k_{\text{rel}}\right) dt. \quad (8.68)$$

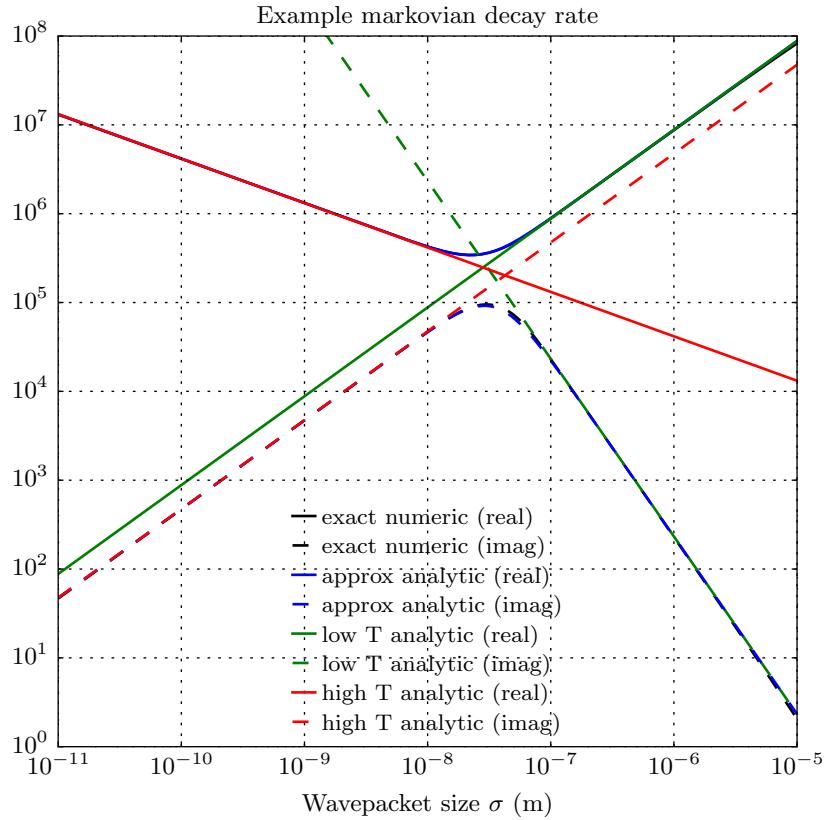
$$= 2^{\frac{5}{4}} \Gamma(\frac{5}{4}) \sqrt{\frac{\sigma}{a_{ij}}} - 2i \frac{m\sigma^2}{\hbar}, \quad (8.69)$$

where we used a first-order Taylor expansion of an exponential in (8.68). We similarly use a first order expansion to take the reciprocal of (8.69) (since the second term is much smaller than the first<sup>13</sup>), and arrive at:

$$\Gamma_{ij(\text{pos})} \approx \frac{1}{2^{\frac{5}{4}} \Gamma(\frac{5}{4})} \sqrt{\frac{a_{ij}}{\sigma}} + \frac{i}{2\sqrt{2}\Gamma(\frac{5}{4})^2} \frac{m\sigma a_{ij}}{\hbar} \quad (8.70)$$

Similarly for the large  $\sigma$  regime, we neglect the first term in the exponent of (8.66) and consider the second term small relative to the third. This is the regime in which the decrease in overlap of the two wavepackets is dominated by their separation in velocity

<sup>13</sup>This isn't necessary in order to obtain a simple expression for  $\Gamma_{ij(\text{pos})}$ —the reciprocal without this approximation is equally simple—but it leaves us with power laws for the real and imaginary parts of  $\Gamma_{ij(\text{pos})}$ , which are easier to stitch together with those from the large  $\sigma$  regime.



**Figure 8.5:** Caption.

space. Following the same process as above gives:

$$\Gamma_{ij}^{-1}(\text{vel}) \approx \int_0^\infty e^{-\left[\frac{i}{2}x_{\text{rel}}k_{\text{rel}} + \frac{\sigma^2}{2}k_{\text{rel}}^2\right]} dt. \quad (8.71)$$

$$\approx \int_0^\infty \left(1 - \frac{i}{2}x_{\text{rel}}k_{\text{rel}}\right) e^{-\frac{\sigma^2}{2}k_{\text{rel}}^2} dt \quad (8.72)$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\hbar}{m\sigma a_{ij}} - i \frac{\hbar^3}{2m^3\sigma^4 a_{ij}^2} \quad (8.73)$$

$$\Rightarrow \Gamma_{ij}(\text{vel}) \approx \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{m\sigma a_{ij}}{\hbar} + i \frac{\hbar}{\pi m\sigma^2} \quad (8.74)$$

Equations (8.70) and (8.74) are our final expressions for the decoherence rate in the limit of small and large wavepackets respectively. Adding their real parts in quadrature and adding the reciprocals of their imaginary parts then provides a reasonable approximation for  $\Gamma_{ij}$  over all wavepacket sizes:

$$\Gamma_{ij} \approx \left[ \text{Re}(\Gamma_{ij}(\text{pos}))^2 + \text{Re}(\Gamma_{ij}(\text{vel}))^2 \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} + i \left[ \text{Im}(\Gamma_{ij}(\text{pos}))^{-1} + \text{Im}(\Gamma_{ij}(\text{vel}))^{-1} \right]^{-1}. \quad (8.75)$$

We now have an approximate analytic expression that is computationally inexpensive to evaluate for each atom in an ensemble at every timestep of a differential equation. An example showing the accuracy of (8.75), compared to the exact expression (8.66) for  $\Gamma_{ij}$  over a range of wavepacket sizes is shown in Figure 8.5.

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

### 8.3 Choice of wavepacket size

How big is a wavepacket?

```
rev:    117 (94dec1aa1706)
author: chrisjbillington
date:   Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100
summary: hvsc
```

This page intentionally left blank

---

## References

- [1] S. N. Bose. *Plancks Gesetz und Lichtquantenhypothese*. Zeitschrift für Physik A Hadrons and Nuclei **26**, 178 (1924). DOI: [10.1007/BF01327326](https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01327326). [p 1]
- [2] A. Einstein. *Quantentheorie des einatomigen idealen Gases*. Sitzungsberichte der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften **3** (1925). [p 1]
- [3] M. H. Anderson, J. R. Ensher, M. R. Matthews, C. E. Wieman, and E. A. Cornell. *Observation of Bose–Einstein Condensation in a Dilute Atomic Vapor*. Science **269**, 198 (1995). DOI: [10.1126/science.269.5221.198](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.269.5221.198). [pp 1 and 7]
- [4] K. B. Davis, M. O. Mewes, M. R. Andrews, N. J. van Druten, D. S. Durfee, D. M. Kurn, and W. Ketterle. *Bose–Einstein Condensation in a Gas of Sodium Atoms*. Physical Review Letters **75**, 3969 (1995). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.75.3969](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.75.3969). [p 1]
- [5] G. Modugno, G. Ferrari, G. Roati, R. J. Brecha, A. Simoni, and M. Inguscio. *Bose–Einstein Condensation of Potassium Atoms by Sympathetic Cooling*. Science **294**, 1320 (2001). DOI: [10.1126/science.1066687](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1066687). [p 1]
- [6] C. C. Bradley, C. A. Sackett, and R. G. Hulet. *Bose–Einstein Condensation of Lithium: Observation of Limited Condensate Number*. Physical Review Letters **78**, 985 (1997). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.78.985](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.78.985). [p 1]
- [7] T. Weber, J. Herbig, M. Mark, H.-C. Nägerl, and R. Grimm. *Bose–Einstein Condensation of Cesium*. Science **299**, 232 (2003). DOI: [10.1126/science.1079699](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1079699). [p 1]
- [8] N. P. Robins, P. A. Altin, J. E. Debs, and J. D. Close. *Atom lasers: Production, properties and prospects for precision inertial measurement*. Physics Reports **529**, 265 (2013). DOI: [10.1016/j.physrep.2013.03.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.physrep.2013.03.006). [p 1]
- [9] A. D. Cronin, J. Schmiedmayer, and D. E. Pritchard. *Optics and interferometry with atoms and molecules*. Rev. Mod. Phys. **81**, 1051 (2009). DOI: [10.1103/RevModPhys.81.1051](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.81.1051). [p 1]
- [10] T. D. Ladd, F. Jelezko, R. Laflamme, Y. Nakamura, C. Monroe, and J. L. O’Brien. *Quantum computers*. Nature **464**, 45 (2010). DOI: [10.1038/nature08812](https://doi.org/10.1038/nature08812). [p 1]
- [11] A. Negretti, P. Treutlein, and T. Calarco. *Quantum computing implementations with neutral particles*. Quantum Information Processing **10**, 721 (2011). DOI: [10.1007/S11128-011-0291-5](https://doi.org/10.1007/S11128-011-0291-5). [p 1]
- [12] I. Bloch, J. Dalibard, and S. Nascimbène. *Quantum simulations with ultracold quantum gases*. Nature Physics **8**, 267 (2012). DOI: [10.1038/nphys2259](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys2259). [p 1]

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

- [13] R. Blatt and C. F. Roos. *Quantum simulations with trapped ions*. Nature Physics **8**, 277 (2012). DOI: [10.1038/nphys2252](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys2252). [p 1]
- [14] A. A. Norrie, R. J. Ballagh, and C. W. Gardiner. *Quantum turbulence and correlations in Bose-Einstein condensate collisions*. Physical Review A **73**, 043617 (2006). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevA.73.043617](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevA.73.043617). [p 1]
- [15] W. F. Vinen. *The Detection of Single Quanta of Circulation in Liquid Helium II*. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London. Series A. Mathematical and Physical Sciences **260**, 218 (1961). DOI: [10.1098/rspa.1961.0029](https://doi.org/10.1098/rspa.1961.0029). [p 2]
- [16] M. R. Matthews, B. P. Anderson, P. C. Haljan, D. S. Hall, C. E. Wieman, and E. A. Cornell. *Vortices in a Bose-Einstein Condensate*. Physical Review Letters **83**, 2498 (1999). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.83.2498](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.83.2498). [p 2]
- [17] C. F. Barenghi, R. J. Donnelly, and W. F. Vinen. *Quantized Vortex Dynamics and Superfluid Turbulence*. Springer (2001). [p 2]
- [18] W. Gerlach and O. Stern. *Der experimentelle Nachweis der Richtungsquantelung im Magnetfeld*. Zeitschrift für Physik **9**, 349 (1922). DOI: [10.1007/BF01326983](https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01326983). [p 3]
- [19] D. J. Wineland, R. E. Drullinger, and F. L. Walls. *Radiation-Pressure Cooling of Bound Resonant Absorbers*. Physical Review Letters **40**, 1639 (1978). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.40.1639](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.40.1639). [p 5]
- [20] H. J. Metcalf and P. V. der Straten. *Laser Cooling and Trapping*. Springer (1999). [pp 6, 10, 19, 107, 109, and 110]
- [21] E. L. Raab, M. Prentiss, A. Cable, S. Chu, and D. E. Pritchard. *Trapping of Neutral Sodium Atoms with Radiation Pressure*. Physical Review Letters **59**, 2631 (1987). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.59.2631](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.59.2631). [p 6]
- [22] P. Zeeman. *On the influence of magnetism on the nature of the light emitted by a substance*. Philosophical Magazine Series 5 **43**, 226 (1897). [pp 6 and 14]
- [23] D. M. Brink and C. V. Sukumar. *Majorana spin-flip transitions in a magnetic trap*. Physical Review A **74**, 035401 (2006). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevA.74.035401](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevA.74.035401). [pp 6 and 7]
- [24] A. Ashkin. *Acceleration and Trapping of Particles by Radiation Pressure*. Physical Review Letters **24**, 156 (1970). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.24.156](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.24.156). [p 7]
- [25] J. Dalibard and C. Cohen-Tannoudji. *Laser cooling below the Doppler limit by polarization gradients: Simple theoretical models*. JOSA B **6**, 2023 (1989). DOI: [10.1364/JOSAB.6.002023](https://doi.org/10.1364/JOSAB.6.002023). [pp 7 and 28]
- [26] P. J. Ungar, D. S. Weiss, E. Riis, and S. Chu. *Optical molasses and multilevel atoms: Theory*. Journal of the Optical Society of America B **6**, 2058 (1989). DOI: [10.1364/JOSAB.6.002058](https://doi.org/10.1364/JOSAB.6.002058). [p 7]
- [27] P. D. Lett, W. D. Phillips, S. L. Rolston, C. E. Tanner, R. N. Watts, and C. I. Westbrook. *Optical molasses*. Journal of the Optical Society of America B **6**, 2084 (1989). DOI: [10.1364/JOSAB.6.002084](https://doi.org/10.1364/JOSAB.6.002084). [p 7]
- [28] C. Salomon, J. Dalibard, W. D. Phillips, A. Clairon, and S. Guellati. *Laser Cooling of Cesium Atoms Below 3 μK*. Europhysics Letters (EPL) **12**, 683 (1990). DOI: [10.1209/0295-5075/12/8/003](https://doi.org/10.1209/0295-5075/12/8/003). [p 7]

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
 author: chrisjbillington  
 date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
 summary: hvsc

- [29] H. F. Hess. *Evaporative cooling of magnetically trapped and compressed spin-polarized hydrogen*. Physical Review B **34**, 3476 (1986). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevB.34.3476](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.34.3476). [p 7]
- [30] Y.-J. Lin, A. R. Perry, R. L. Compton, I. B. Spielman, and J. V. Porto. *Rapid production of  $^{87}\text{Rb}$  Bose–Einstein condensates in a combined magnetic and optical potential*. Physical Review A **79**, 063631 (2009). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevA.79.063631](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevA.79.063631). [p 8]
- [31] C. Chin, R. Grimm, P. Julienne, and E. Tiesinga. *Feshbach resonances in ultracold gases*. Reviews of Modern Physics **82**, 1225 (2010). DOI: [10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1225](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1225). [p 8]
- [32] S. Inouye, M. R. Andrews, J. Stenger, H.-J. Miesner, D. M. Stamper-Kurn, and W. Ketterle. *Observation of Feshbach resonances in a Bose–Einstein condensate*. Nature **392**, 151 (1998). DOI: [10.1038/32354](https://doi.org/10.1038/32354). [p 8]
- [33] G. Thalhammer, G. Barontini, L. De Sarlo, J. Catani, F. Minardi, and M. Inguscio. *Double Species Bose–Einstein Condensate with Tunable Interspecies Interactions*. Physical Review Letters **100**, 210402 (2008). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.100.210402](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.100.210402). [pp 9 and 107]
- [34] E. Madelung. *Quantentheorie in hydrodynamischer Form*. Zeitschrift für Physik A Hadrons and Nuclei **40**, 322 (1927). DOI: [10.1007/BF01400372](https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01400372). [p 9]
- [35] D. A. Steck. Rubidium 87 D Line Data, (2015). (revision 2.1.4) <http://steck.us/alkalidata>. [pp 10, 11, 14, 15, 17, 23, and 24]
- [36] D. A. Steck. Quantum and Atom Optics, (2017). (revision 0.12.0) <http://steck.us/teaching>. [pp 10, 19, 20, 22, and 24]
- [37] B. E. King. *Angular Momentum Coupling and Rabi Frequencies for Simple Atomic Transitions*. arXiv:0804.4528 [physics] (2008). ARXIV: [0804.4528](https://arxiv.org/abs/0804.4528). [pp 10 and 20]
- [38] P. M. Farrell and W. R. MacGillivray. *On the consistency of Rabi frequency calculations*. Journal of Physics A: Mathematical and General **28**, 209 (1995). DOI: [10.1088/0305-4470/28/1/023](https://doi.org/10.1088/0305-4470/28/1/023). [p 10]
- [39] E. Arimondo, M. Inguscio, and P. Violino. *Experimental determinations of the hyperfine structure in the alkali atoms*. Rev. Mod. Phys. **49**, 31 (1977). DOI: [10.1103/RevModPhys.49.31](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.49.31). [p 11]
- [40] J. J. Sakurai. *Modern Quantum Mechanics*. Pearson (1994). [p 12]
- [41] G. Breit and I. I. Rabi. *Measurement of Nuclear Spin*. Physical Review **38**, 2082 (1931). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRev.38.2082.2](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRev.38.2082.2). [p 19]
- [42] L. M. Bennie, P. B. Wigley, S. S. Szigeti, M. Jasperse, J. J. Hope, L. D. Turner, and R. P. Anderson. *Precise wavefunction engineering with magnetic resonance*. arXiv:1412.6854 (2014). ARXIV: [1412.6854](https://arxiv.org/abs/1412.6854). [p 27]
- [43] A. Görlitz, J. M. Vogels, A. E. Leanhardt, C. Raman, T. L. Gustavson, J. R. Abo-Shaeer, A. P. Chikkatur, S. Gupta, S. Inouye, T. Rosenband, and W. Ketterle. *Realization of Bose–Einstein Condensates in Lower Dimensions*. Physical Review Letters **87**, 130402 (2001). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.87.130402](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.87.130402). [p 28]
- [44] S. Hofferberth, I. Lesanovsky, B. Fischer, T. Schumm, and J. Schmiedmayer. *Non-equilibrium coherence dynamics in one-dimensional Bose gases*. Nature **449**, 324 (2007). DOI: [10.1038/nature06149](https://doi.org/10.1038/nature06149). [p 28]

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

- [45] B. Rauer, P. Grišins, I. E. Mazets, T. Schweigler, W. Rohringer, R. Geiger, T. Langen, and J. Schmiedmayer. *Cooling of a one-dimensional Bose gas*. Physical Review Letters **116**, 030402 (2016). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.116.030402](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.116.030402). [p 28]
- [46] P. D. Lett, R. N. Watts, C. I. Westbrook, W. D. Phillips, P. L. Gould, and H. J. Metcalf. *Observation of Atoms Laser Cooled below the Doppler Limit*. Physical Review Letters **61**, 169 (1988). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.61.169](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.61.169). [p 28]
- [47] M. Saffman, T. G. Walker, and K. Mølmer. *Quantum information with Rydberg atoms*. Reviews of Modern Physics **82**, 2313 (2010). DOI: [10.1103/RevModPhys.82.2313](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.82.2313). [p 28]
- [48] E. Urban, T. A. Johnson, T. Henage, L. Isenhower, D. D. Yavuz, T. G. Walker, and M. Saffman. *Observation of Rydberg blockade between two atoms*. Nature Physics **5**, 110 (2009). DOI: [10.1038/nphys178](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys178). [p 28]
- [49] B. B. Blinov, J. R. N. Kohn, M. J. Madsen, P. Maunz, D. L. Moehring, and C. Monroe. *Broadband laser cooling of trapped atoms with ultrafast pulses*. JOSA B **23**, 1170 (2006). DOI: [10.1364/JOSAB.23.001170](https://doi.org/10.1364/JOSAB.23.001170). [p 28]
- [50] A. J. McCulloch, D. V. Sheludko, M. Junker, and R. E. Scholten. *High-coherence picosecond electron bunches from cold atoms*. Nature Communications **4**, 1692 (2013). DOI: [10.1038/ncomms2699](https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms2699). [p 28]
- [51] T. Brabec and F. Krausz. *Intense few-cycle laser fields: Frontiers of nonlinear optics*. Reviews of Modern Physics **72**, 545 (2000). DOI: [10.1103/RevModPhys.72.545](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.72.545). [p 28]
- [52] C. Brezinski. *Extrapolation algorithms and Padé approximations: A historical survey*. Applied Numerical Mathematics **20**, 299 (1996). DOI: [10.1016/0168-9274\(95\)00110-7](https://doi.org/10.1016/0168-9274(95)00110-7). [p 30]
- [53] C. Moler and C. Van Loan. *Nineteen Dubious Ways to Compute the Exponential of a Matrix, Twenty-Five Years Later*. SIAM Review **45**, 3 (2003). DOI: [10.1137/S00361444024180](https://doi.org/10.1137/S00361444024180). [p 30]
- [54] J. J. Sakurai. *Modern quantum mechanics*. Addison-Wesley Pub. Co, Reading, Mass (1994). [pp 31 and 76]
- [55] D. J. Tannor. *Introduction to Quantum Mechanics: A Time-Dependent Perspective*. University Science Books (2007). [pp 33, 36, 55, 62, and 85]
- [56] S. Weinzierl. *Introduction to Monte Carlo methods*. arXiv:hep-ph/0006269 (2000). ARXIV: [hep-ph/0006269](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ph/0006269). [p 33]
- [57] F. J. Dyson. *The S Matrix in Quantum Electrodynamics*. Physical Review **75**, 1736 (1949). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRev.75.1736](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRev.75.1736). [p 34]
- [58] V. Kaplunovsky. On Perturbation Theory, Dyson Series, and Feynman Diagrams, (2016). Online lecture notes <http://bolvan.ph.utexas.edu/~vadim/Classes/2016f/dyson.pdf>. [p 34]
- [59] M. Suzuki. *Quantum Monte Carlo Methods in Condensed Matter Physics*. World Scientific (1993). [p 37]
- [60] B. I. Schneider and L. A. Collins. *The discrete variable method for the solution of the time-dependent Schrödinger equation*. Journal of Non-Crystalline Solids **351**, 1551 (2005). DOI: [10.1016/j.jnoncrysol.2005.03.028](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jnoncrysol.2005.03.028). [pp 37, 62, 63, 65, and 66]

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

- [61] M. Suzuki. *General Decomposition Theory of Ordered Exponentials*. Proceedings of the Japan Academy, Series B **69**, 161 (1993). DOI: [10.2183/pjab.69.161](https://doi.org/10.2183/pjab.69.161). [p 37]
- [62] B. I. Schneider, L. A. Collins, and S. X. Hu. *Parallel solver for the time-dependent linear and nonlinear Schrödinger equation*. Physical Review E **73**, 036708 (2006). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevE.73.036708](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevE.73.036708). [pp 42, 62, 65, 70, 80, and 85]
- [63] J. Javanainen and J. Ruostekoski. *Symbolic calculation in development of algorithms: Split-step methods for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation*. Journal of Physics A: Mathematical and General **39**, L179 (2006). DOI: [10.1088/0305-4470/39/12/L02](https://doi.org/10.1088/0305-4470/39/12/L02). [p 44]
- [64] R. D. Skeel, G. Zhang, and T. Schlick. *A family of symplectic integrators: stability, accuracy, and molecular dynamics applications*. SIAM J. Sci. Comput. **18**, 203 (1997). [p 44]
- [65] G. Dahlquist and Å. Björck. *Numerical Methods*. Dover Books on Mathematics. Dover Publications (2003). LCCB: 2002072867. [p 45]
- [66] K. Mølmer and Y. Castin. *Monte carlo wavefunctions in quantum optics*. Quantum and Semiclassical Optics: Journal of the European Optical Society Part B **8**, 49 (1996). [p 45]
- [67] M. B. Plenio and P. L. Knight. *The quantum-jump approach to dissipative dynamics in quantum optics*. Rev. Mod. Phys. **70**, 101 (1998). DOI: [10.1103/RevModPhys.70.101](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.70.101). [p 45]
- [68] A. Bruckner, J. Bruckner, and B. Thomson. *Real Analysis*. Prentice-Hall (1997). LCCB: 96022123. [p 53]
- [69] H. Levi. *A geometric construction of the Dirichlet kernel applications*. Transactions of the New York Academy of Sciences **36**, 640 (1974). DOI: [10.1111/j.2164-0947.1974.tb03023.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.2164-0947.1974.tb03023.x). [p 53]
- [70] S. A. Orszag. *Comparison of pseudospectral and spectral approximation*. Studies in Applied Mathematics **51**, 253 (1972). DOI: [10.1002/sapm1972513253](https://doi.org/10.1002/sapm1972513253). [p 55]
- [71] N. Phillips. *An example of non-linear computational instability*. In *The Atmosphere and the Sea in Motion*, pages 501–504. Rockefeller Univ. Press (1959). [p 55]
- [72] B. Fornberg. *The pseudospectral method: Comparisons with finite differences for the elastic wave equation*. GEOPHYSICS **52**, 483 (1987). DOI: [10.1190/1.1442319](https://doi.org/10.1190/1.1442319). [pp 58 and 67]
- [73] B. Fornberg. *Generation of finite difference formulas on arbitrarily spaced grids*. Mathematics of Computation **51**, 699 (1988). DOI: [10.1090/S0025-5718-1988-0935077-0](https://doi.org/10.1090/S0025-5718-1988-0935077-0). [pp 59, 60, and 70]
- [74] W. Press. *Numerical Recipes 3rd Edition: The Art of Scientific Computing*. Cambridge University Press (2007). LCCB: 89015841. [p 60]
- [75] A. Gupta and V. Kumar. *The scalability of FFT on parallel computers*. IEEE Transactions on Parallel and Distributed Systems **4**, 922 (1993). [pp 60 and 80]
- [76] J.-P. Berrut and L. N. Trefethen. *Barycentric lagrange interpolation*. SIAM Review **46**, 501 (2004). DOI: [10.1137/S0036144402417715](https://doi.org/10.1137/S0036144402417715). [p 63]
- [77] R. M. Caplan and R. Carretero-González. *Numerical stability of explicit runge-kutta finite difference schemes for the nonlinear schrödinger equation*. CoRR **abs/1107.4810** (2011). [p 65]

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc

- [78] B. M. C. Davies. *Vortex dynamics in Bose–Einstein condensates*. PhD thesis, University of Otago, Dunedin, New Zealand (2000). [pp 66 and 78]
- [79] L. Lehtovaara, J. Toivanen, and J. Eloranta. *Solution of time-independent Schrödinger equation by the imaginary time propagation method*. *J. Comput. Phys.* **221**, 148 (2007). DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jcp.2006.06.006>. [p 72]
- [80] D. M. Young. *Iterative Methods for Solving Partial Difference Equations of Elliptical Type*. PhD thesis, Harvard University (1950). [p 73]
- [81] D. Ahn and S. L. Chuang. *Variational calculations of subbands in a quantum well with uniform electric field: Gram–Schmidt orthogonalization approach*. *Applied Physics Letters* **49**, 1450 (1986). DOI: [10.1063/1.97299](https://doi.org/10.1063/1.97299). [p 76]
- [82] W. Press. *The art of scientific computing*. Cambridge University Press (1992). [p 78]
- [83] C. Pethick and H. Smith. *Bose–Einstein condensation in dilute gases*. Cambridge University Press (2002). [p 78]
- [84] M. L. Chiofalo, S. Succi, and M. P. Tosi. *Ground state of trapped interacting Bose–Einstein condensates by an explicit imaginary-time algorithm*. *Phys. Rev. E* **62**, 7438 (2000). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevE.62.7438](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevE.62.7438). [pp 79 and 84]
- [85] G. M. Muslu and H. A. Erbay. *Higher-order split-step Fourier schemes for the generalized nonlinear Schrödinger equation*. *Mathematics and Computers in Simulation* **7**, 581 (2005). DOI: [10.1016/j.matcom.2004.08.002](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.matcom.2004.08.002). [p 80]
- [86] M. Heroux, P. Raghavan, and H. Simon. *Parallel processing for scientific computing*. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, Philadelphia, PA (2006). [p 80]
- [87] P. Gulshani and D. J. Rowe. *Quantum mechanics in rotating frames. I. The impossibility of rigid flow*. *Canadian Journal of Physics* **56**, 468 (1978). DOI: [10.1139/p78-060](https://doi.org/10.1139/p78-060). [p 83]
- [88] E. G. M. van Kempen, S. J. J. M. F. Kokkelmans, D. J. Heinzen, and B. J. Verhaar. *Inter-isotope determination of ultracold rubidium interactions from three high-precision experiments*. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **88**, 093201 (2002). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.88.093201](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.88.093201). [p 83]

---

## Word count

Total

Words in text: 43719  
Words in headers: 351  
Words outside text (captions, etc.): 6616  
Number of headers: 82  
Number of floats/tables/figures: 34  
Number of math inlines: 1656  
Number of math displayed: 264  
Files: 9

Subcounts:

text+headers+captions (#headers/#floats/#inlines/#displayed)  
7422+77+1300 (23/3/559/73) File(s) total: atomic\_physics.tex  
725+17+385 (4/4/7/0) File(s) total: experiment.tex  
50+0+0 (0/0/0/0) File(s) total: front\_matter.tex  
6798+56+649 (10/5/175/50) File(s) total: hidden\_variables.tex  
1596+3+98 (2/0/12/0) File(s) total: introduction.tex  
23087+155+3403 (31/15/824/137) File(s) total: numerics.tex  
4+6+0 (1/0/0/0) File(s) total: software.tex  
4001+24+781 (8/7/79/4) File(s) total: velocimetry.tex  
36+13+0 (3/0/0/0) File(s) total: wave\_mixing.tex

rev: 117 (94dec1aa1706)  
author: chrisjbillington  
date: Fri Mar 23 15:18:53 2018 +1100  
summary: hvsc